

The CAVALRY JOURNAL

IN THIS NUMBER



Cavalry's Part in Infantry School Maneuvers

—Lieutenant Colonel Kinzie B. Edmunds

Minute Men of the Next War

—Major General Johnson Hagood

Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team Tryouts

—Captain Thomas J. Heavey

Influences of Mechanization

—Colonel Charles F. Martin

Modern Cavalry

—Generalleutnant G. Brandt

An Improved Officer's Shelter Tent

—Captain Gyles Merrill

Concentration of 14th Cavalry

—Captain Royden Williamson



Published Bi-Monthly by
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION
 JULY-AUGUST, 1935

Book Suggestions

U. S. Cavalry Association

HORSE SUBJECTS

A-HUNTING WE WILL GO, <i>Geoffrey Brooke</i>	\$3.00
AMERICAN METHODS OF HORSESHOEING, <i>Churchill</i>	1.50
AMERICAN POLO, <i>Bent</i>	6.00
ANIMAL MANAGEMENT, <i>Cavalry School</i>	0.95
THE ART OF RIDING, <i>Lt. Col. M. F. McTaggart</i>	3.50
AS TO POLO, <i>W. Cameron Forbes</i>	3.00
BREAKING AND RIDING, <i>James Fillis</i>	7.50
BRIDLEWISE, <i>Lt. Col. S. G. Goldschmidt</i>	5.00
CROSS SADDLE AND SIDE SADDLE, <i>Christy</i>	5.00
DEFENSE OF THE FORWARD SEAT, <i>Littauer and Kournakoff</i>	3.50
EXTERIOR OF THE HORSE, <i>Goubeaux and Barrier</i>	5.00
AN EYE FOR A HORSE, <i>Goldschmidt</i>	2.75
FAMOUS SADDLE HORSES, <i>Suzanne</i>	4.50
FEEDS AND FEEDING, <i>Henry and Morrison</i>	4.50
FELLOWSHIP OF THE HORSE, <i>Goldschmidt</i>	5.00
FROM COLONEL TO SUBALTERN (letters), <i>McTaggart</i>	5.00
FUNDAMENTALS OF HORSEMANSHIP, <i>Rademan</i>	3.00
THE GAITS—THE HORSEMAN (translated from the French), <i>Cavalry School</i>	0.95
HINTS ON HORSEMANSHIP, <i>McTaggart</i>	2.50
THE HORSE AND HIS SCHOOLING, <i>McTaggart</i>	2.50
HORSE LOVERS, <i>Brooke</i>	3.50
HORSE SENSE FOR AMATEURS, <i>King</i>	1.50
HORSE SENSE AND HORSEMANSHIP, <i>Brooke</i>	5.00
HORSESHOEING, <i>Churchill</i> , 1933	1.20
HORSE TRAINING, OUTDOOR AND HIGH SCHOOL, <i>Beudant</i>	3.00
(Translated by Lt. Col. J. A. Barry, U. S. Cav.)	
IN MY OPINION, <i>Lyon</i>	7.50
AN INTRODUCTION TO POLO, "Marco"	6.00
A MANUAL OF EQUITATION (translated from the French), <i>Cavalry School</i>	0.95
MODERN HORSE MANAGEMENT, <i>Colonel R. S. Timmis, Royal Canadian Dragoons</i>	7.50
MODERN HORSE SERIES, <i>Timmis</i>	2.60
MODERN POLO, <i>Miller</i>	6.50
MOUNT AND MAN, <i>McTaggart</i>	5.00
THE PONY EXPRESS, <i>Chapman</i>	3.50
POLO PONIES: THEIR TRAINING AND SCHOOLING, <i>Lt. Paul G. Kendall</i>	7.50
POLO PONY TRAINING, <i>Ramsay</i>	1.00
PRACTICAL HORSEMANSHIP, <i>Major J. L. M. Barrett</i>	4.00
PRACTICAL JUMPING, <i>Barrett</i>	5.00
PRACTICAL LIGHT HORSE BREEDING, <i>Wall</i>	3.50
PRINCIPLES OF EQUITATION, <i>de Souza</i>	5.00
RIDING AND HUNTING, <i>Hayes</i>	8.75
RIDING REFLECTIONS (forward seat), <i>Santini</i>	9.40
RIDING AND SCHOOLING, <i>Timmis</i>	4.00
RIDING FORWARD, <i>Captain V. S. Littauer</i>	2.00
THE SADDLE HORSE, <i>Taylor</i>	3.50
SCHOOL FOR HORSE AND RIDER, <i>Hance</i>	3.75
SEATS, GAITS, REACTIONS (translated from the French), <i>Cavalry School</i>	0.95
SELECTION AND TRAINING OF THE POLO PONY, <i>Cullum</i>	5.00
STABLE AND SADDLE, <i>McTaggart</i>	5.00
STABLEWISE, <i>Goldschmidt</i>	5.00
TCHIFFELY'S RIDE (<i>Argentine to U. S.</i>)	3.00
WAY OF A MAN WITH A HORSE, <i>Brooke</i>	7.00

(Prices include postage)

Order through THE CAVALRY JOURNAL
1624 H Street, N.W. Washington, D. C.

Gift
Lt. Colonel Thomas M. Spaulding
9-10-1935

The CAVALRY JOURNAL

PUBLISHED BI-MONTHLY BY
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION
CAPTAIN CHARLES S. MILLER, Cavalry, Editor

VOLUME XLIV

JULY-AUGUST, 1935

NUMBER 190

Publication Date: August 10, 1935

Contents

Comanche Frontispiece	Modern Cavalry: Training; General Conclusions 35
Famous War Horses. I. Comanche 5	Generalleutnant G. Grandt.
6th Cavalry at the Maneuvers of the 8th Brigade..... 6	Notes from the Chief of Cavalry 47
Lieutenant Colonel Kinzie B. Edmunds, 6th Cavalry.	What Would You Do?—Cavalry's Share of Army's Enlisted Increase.
Anti-Aircraft Action of the Cavalry Light Machine Gun.... 10	The Increasing Importance of Horsemanship 49
Second Lieutenant James B. Corbett, 5th Cavalry.	Major Wilfrid M. Blunt, Cavalry.
An Improved Type of Officer's Shelter Tent..... 11	Graduates, The Cavalry School, 1913 50
Captain Gyles Merrill, Cavalry.	Minute Men of the Next War 51
Progress of the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team Tryouts.... 14	Major General Johnson Hagood.
Captain Thomas J. Heavey, 3rd Cavalry.	The Editor's Saddle 54
The Concentration of the 14th Cavalry 17	Famous War Horses—Campaign for National Guard Members—Cavalry's Part in Fort Benning Maneuvers—One Hundred and Three Fights and Scrimmages.
Captain Royden Williamson, 14th Cavalry.	Sports 55
Graduation Events, The Cavalry School, 1935 21	Seventeenth Annual West Point Horse Show (Captain Frank DeK. Huyler)—The Cavalry School Race Meeting—Fort Ethan Allen Horse Show—Annual Hunter Trials and Horse Show at Presidio of Monterey—Military Classes at the Tuxedo Horse Show—305th Cavalry Equestrian Games (Sergeant John C. Fairchild)—Polo in the Regiments—Polo Tournaments Calendar.
Major Kent C. Lambert, 9th Cavalry.	The Foreign Military Press 64
Summer Camp of 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard..... 24	Major Alexander L. P. Johnson, Infantry.
Lieutenant Glenn Balch.	Book Reviews 68
Panama's Irregular Cavalry 26	The Campaign of the Marne—Ordeal by Fire.
Captain Maurice Rose, Cavalry.	Organization Activities 69
Influences of Mechanization, Motorization and Machine Guns on the Horse Cavalry Regiment's Tactics, Organization and Supply Methods 28	
Colonel Charles F. Martin, 13th Cavalry.	
Experimental Harness for New Trailers 34	

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR OPINIONS EXPRESSED IN PUBLISHED CONTRIBUTIONS

PUBLISHING OFFICE:
1406 EAST FRANKLIN STREET
RICHMOND, VA.

EDITORIAL OFFICE:
1624 H STREET
WASHINGTON, D. C.

Entered as second class matter at Richmond, Virginia, under the Act of March 3, 1879. For mailing at Special Rate of Postage Provided in Section 412, Act of October 3, 1917. Copyright, 1934, by the U. S. Cavalry Association.

\$3.00 per year, foreign postage 50c additional. Single copy: 50c

MILITARY BOOKS

TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF CAVALRY	\$4.50
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF COAST ARTILLERY... <i>Basic</i>	4.50
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF COAST ARTILLERY... <i>Advanced</i>	6.00
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF INFANTRY	4.00
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF INFANTRY	5.75
BASIC MILITARY TRAINING	2.50
MAP RECONNAISSANCE (Map Reading, Sketching, Aerial Photos) <i>Cloth</i>	1.60
..... <i>Leatherette</i>	1.80
MAP READING, SKETCHING AND AERIAL PHOTOS	1.50
..... <i>Cloth</i>	1.25
..... <i>Paper</i>	1.00
MACHINE GUNNER'S POCKET MANUAL	1.75
..... <i>Plain</i>	1.75
..... <i>With clasp, map pocket and slate</i>	2.25
A MACHINE GUNNER'S NOTEBOOK, Campbell	1.00
OFFICER'S GUIDE	2.75
MAP INDEX (Gettysburg and Fort Benning)	1.00
MASS PHYSICAL TRAINING	3.00
RESERVE OFFICER'S EXAMINER	1.50
MILITARY MOTOR TRANSPORTATION	1.50
HISTORY OF CAVALRY, Denison	3.00
HISTORY OF THE THIRD U. S. CAVALRY, Deibert	2.00
INEVITABLE WAR, Stockton, \$7.50. With service discount	4.87
INFANTRY IN BATTLE	3.00
THE OLD SERGEANT'S CONFERENCES	1.50
..... <i>Cloth \$1.00, Leatherette</i>	1.50
JEB STUART, Thomason	2.00
BEDFORD FORREST AND HIS CRITTER COMPANY	5.00
FUNDAMENTALS OF MILITARY STRATEGY, Robinson	2.50
BALCK'S TACTICS	1.75
ARMY ENGINEERING, Mitchell	3.00
THE DEFENSE OF DUFFER'S DRIFT (A tactical classic)50
THE BATTLE OF BOOBY'S BLUFFS (A tactical classic)75
TERRAIN EXERCISES, Waldron	1.50
PRINCIPLES OF COMMAND, Jones	1.00
OUTLINES OF THE WORLD'S MILITARY HISTORY, Mitchell	5.00
STEELE'S AMERICAN CAMPAIGNS (2 vols.)	10.00
..... <i>per set</i>	10.00
BALANCING DAILY DIETS, Perley	2.11
BLANK FORMS FOR MENU DEVELOPMENT OR ANALYSIS	1.25
FIELD SERVICE REGULATIONS75
THIRTY-MINUTE TALKS, Stewart and Waldron	1.50
NATIONAL DEFENSE (reference data)75
THE PROFESSION OF ARMS, Colby	1.50
COMMANDO (BOER WAR CAVALRY NARRATIVE), Reitz	1.25
A BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF OUR CIVIL WAR, Dodge	2.25
REVOLT IN THE DESERT, Lawrence	1.00
LIVES OF A BENGAL LANCER, Yeats-Brown	1.00
COURT-MARTIAL PRACTICAL GUIDE	1.00
FLAGS OF THE WORLD, Waldron50
COMPANY ADMINISTRATION	1.75
..... <i>Cloth</i>	1.75
..... <i>Paper</i>	1.25
THE SOLDIER'S HANDBOOK50
ARMY POST AND TOWNS, Sullivan	3.00
A GENERAL STAFF OFFICER'S NOTES	1.50

We can obtain any other book for you

The prices in this list are postpaid

Write for our discounts.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

1624 H Street, N. W.

Washington, D. C.

The United States Cavalry Association

Organized November 9, 1885

DESIGN

1. *The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.*—ARTICLE III OF THE CONSTITUTION.

OFFICERS

President

MAJOR GENERAL LEON B. KROMER

Vice-President

COLONEL ALEXANDER M. MILLER, JR.

Secretary and Treasurer

CAPTAIN CHARLES S. MILLER, Cavalry

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

BRIGADIER GENERAL DUDLEY J. HARD, 54th Cavalry Brigade, Ohio National Guard.

COLONEL GEORGE GRUNERT, Cavalry.

COLONEL ROBERT C. RICHARDSON, JR., (Cavalry), G. S. C.

COLONEL GEORGE H. CHERRINGTON, 308th Cavalry.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL CHARLES L. SCOTT, Cavalry.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL JACK W. HEARD, Cavalry.

MAJOR JOHN B. COULTER (Cavalry), G. S. C.

MAJOR GEARY F. EPPLEY, 306th Cavalry.

CAPTAIN JAMES T. DUKE, 3rd Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follow:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and noncommissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, N.W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

DUES AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$3.00, which includes subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$3.00 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 50 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address. Changes in address are made only on notification.



COMANCHE
The only survivor of the Battle of the Little Big Horn.

FAMOUS WAR HORSES

I. COMANCHE

IT IS contended by many that *Comanche*, the sole survivor of all the forces in Custer's last stand at the Battle of the Little Big Horn, June 25, 1876, is the most famous horse in our military history.

He was the mount of Captain Miles W. Keogh who was killed with Custer. It has been told that he was captured from the Comanche Indians. However, the preponderance of evidence shows that he was purchased at the age of five by the Army Supply Depot at St. Louis, in 1867, and joined the 7th Cavalry at Ellis, Kansas, the same year.

Comanche was a gelding 15½ hands high, had a 73-inch girth, and weighed 940 pounds. In color he was a yellowish bay, sometimes called a claybank, with a dark stripe down his back. The official descriptive list carried him as a buckskin. He was very well suited to the hardships of campaigning against the Indians, being substantial and hardy, a good walker, a good feeder, and capable of living off the plains when grain was not available.

Interest attaches to the manner in which Captain Keogh came to ride the horse and the incident which led to his being named *Comanche*. In 1867 Captain Keogh was a member of a scouting force which engaged in a brief skirmish. Keogh's horse was killed under him. Lieutenant Brewster, in command of Troop I, dismounted one of his men. The horse turned over to Captain Keogh was *Comanche*, who was at that time without a name.

Some days later Captain Keogh was fired upon by Comanche Indians hiding in the brush. His new mount received a long, raking, flesh wound in the rump, caused by either a bullet or an arrow. On account of the animal's splendid behavior under fire after being wounded by the Comanche's, Captain Keogh at once named him *Comanche*.

There appear to have been no unusual adventures in the life of *Comanche* from the day he received his name until the fateful day in June, 1876.

When he started out from Fort Abraham Lincoln (on the Missouri River opposite Bismark, Dakota Territory), against the Sioux and their allies in 1876, *Comanche* was already a veteran with a battle scar on his rump. Nothing definite has been learned about the Battle of the Little Big Horn. Deductions as to what actually happened have been reached by the positions of the dead. *Comanche's* wounds were principally on one side, showing a possibility that Captain Keogh had fired in a standing position from the side of the animal, *Comanche* protecting his master at any cost.

The Indians took *Comanche's* saddle and bridle but considered him too badly wounded to be of any service. Of his seven wounds, three were severe, including one passing through the neck, near the left shoulder, one in the front part of the neck, and another in the flank. When he was found after the battle it was at first thought advisable to destroy him, but friends of Captain Keogh recognized the animal and decided to make an attempt to save him. General Hugh L. Scott (then a lieutenant just out of West Point), who joined Troop I the day after the battle, nursed him back to health with the assistance of Blacksmith Korn.

In recognition of *Comanche's* service, Colonel Samuel D. Sturgis, Commanding the 7th Cavalry at Fort Abraham Lincoln, issued his famous General Orders No. 7, on April 10, 1878, directing that "a special and comfortable stall" be fitted for *Comanche*, that he "not be ridden by any person whatsoever under any circumstances" and that he not be "put to any kind of work," "to the end that his life may be prolonged to the utmost limit." The order further directed that on all occasions of mounted regimental ceremonies *Comanche* be saddled, bridled, draped in mourning and, led by a mounted trooper of Troop I, be paraded with the regiment.

In 1879, *Comanche* moved with the 7th Cavalry to the Dakota Black Hills, and in 1888 accompanied the regiment to Fort Riley, Kansas, where he died November 7, 1891. Since the 7th Cavalry had no means of caring for the remains they were presented to Professor Lewis L. Dyche, expert taxidermist, and they may now be seen in life-like shape at the Dyche Museum, University of Kansas, at Lawrence, a reminder of "the desperate struggle against overwhelming numbers, of the hopeless conflict and of the heroic manner in which all went down on that fatal day."

6th Cavalry at the Maneuvers of the 8th Brigade

By KINZIE EDMUNDS

I. TWO-SIDED MANEUVER

ONE difficulty in an article of this kind is the decision of what to put in and what to leave out. The maneuvers of the 8th Brigade, Reinforced, at Fort Benning between the dates May 6th and May 18th, 1935, included a week of combat firing, command post exercises, demonstrations and minor tactical problems, followed by a two-sided maneuver involving a reinforced, motorized infantry regiment on each side, followed again by a combined brigade maneuver with an outlined enemy. They involved also for the 6th Cavalry a 230 mile march each way to and from the maneuver area. This is an embarrassment of riches. If I attempted to cover at one time the whole field, I would soon exhaust my writing arm and the reader's patience. Another difficulty is to keep the account from looking and reading like a Leavenworth problem with maps, general and special situations complete, a picture likely to make our over-schooled and under-practiced officers nauseated at the start.

I am struggling to hold a course which will avoid both of these dangers. Accordingly, this particular article is limited to the cavalry actions involved in the two-sided maneuver, with only so much of the missions and actions of the parent infantry units as is necessary to understand the cavalry actions. Maps are discarded in favor of a few easily read, I hope, and diagrammatic sketches. Let him who wishes a more detailed impression of the terrain consult the one-inch or the three-inch map of the Fort Benning Reservation.

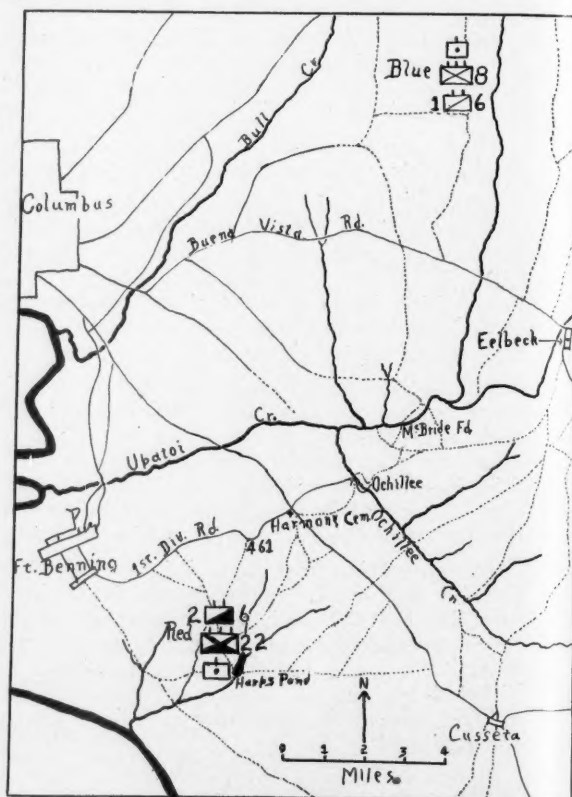
Here I dismiss the terrain with the scant information that it is rolling and heavily wooded, with numerous clearings where cultivation has been or still is, that ground visibility is limited in the extreme, and that the only improved roads are the First Division Road, gravel, the Columbus-Cuseta and the Buena Vista Roads, both paved. There is also a stretch of graded dirt road from Harmony Cemetery to Ochillee. The remaining roads in the area are mere ungraded, one-way and usually sandy trails. However, most of the stream crossings boast substantial wooden bridges or culverts. Both the Upatoi and Ochillee Creeks were fordable at the time of the maneuvers, but both have precipitous, heavily wooded and brushed banks. The number of practicable crossings is, for this reason, quite limited.

SITUATION

The problem selected was a simple one. Upatoi Creek was assumed to be the boundary between two hostile states; Blue, north, and Red, south. A reinforced, motorized infantry regiment on each side was held back

Cavalry's role in Fort Benning problem developed prompt, aggressive actions.

from the frontier awaiting diplomatic decisions. The opposing forces were released at the same hour with the mission on each side of securing a bridgehead at McBride Ford where there is a bridge as well as a ford. Distances by road were equal; it was practically a race to the objective; it was desired to develop some ideas on the tactical handling of motorized infantry units. The cavalry on each side was released an hour before the infantry by delaying the availability of the infantry trucks.



Opening Situation.

NARRATIVE

The commander of the 8th Infantry (Blue), doubtful of success in securing the crossing at McBride Ford, decided not to put all of his eggs in the basket. Accordingly, he dispatched two advance forces, one consisting of his

cavalry, less the scout cars, but with the motorized battery and a platoon of two light, fast tanks attached, on McBride Ford, the other a motorized column made up of the two scout cars reinforced by a small force of infantry in reconnaissance cars and trucks, on Eelbeck. His main body he moved to the Buena Vista Road and awaited information. His reasons are almost self-evident: If the cavalry as reinforced could not secure a bridgehead, it could at least be depended upon to block the crossing to the Reds; he was considerably closer to Eelbeck than were the Reds and nearly certain of its bridge. If the cavalry failed to secure a bridgehead, he could cross his main body at Eelbeck and be on equal terms with the Reds on the south bank of the Upatoi. On the other hand, should his cavalry succeed in its mission, he could rush his main body to its support.

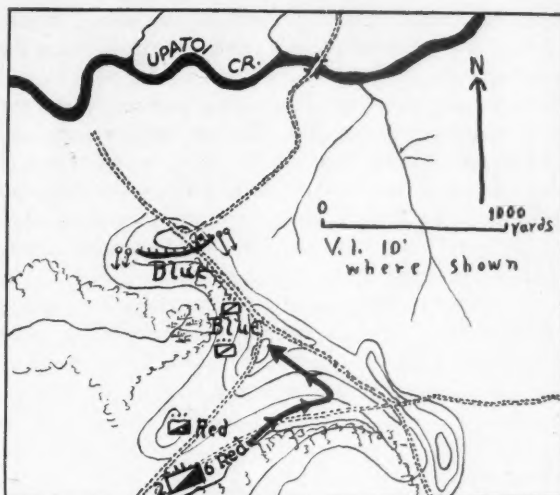
However, he was dependent on information; information waited on communication and communication failed. Why it failed, I do not know. The cavalry commander tells me that his pack set was working with the cavalry set left with the infantry. After waiting impatiently for some time, the commander of the 8th Infantry split his main body as he had split his advance detachments, sending one battalion to McBride Ford and one to Eelbeck. At peace strength, he had but two.

The 1st Squadron (Blue), reinforced by a platoon from the Machine-Gun Troop, having the single clear and definite mission of securing a crossing for the infantry, rode hard and fast. It reached the Upatoi without opposition, thundered at a gallop across the bridge and, still at a gallop, up the mile of steep slope on the south bank to the rim, arriving with horses blown but a full ten minutes before the Red Cavalry. It had covered eleven miles in fifty minutes. The motorized battery and the tanks arrived some time later—about half an hour later according to the Blue Squadron Commander.

The Red Cavalry mission differed from the Blue. The 2d Squadron, with its platoon of machine guns was to cover the infantry advance and to reconnoiter all crossings of the Upatoi between Eelbeck and McBride Ford, both inclusive. At nine miles an hour in one column it moved via RJ 461 and Ochillee. The 22d Infantry followed by the same route.

The cavalry scout cars, like the Blue, were detached. Reinforced by infantry in reconnaissance cars, they were directed on a known ford about a mile above McBride Ford with instructions to secure the north bank. The detachment succeeded in this mission. Leaving the cars on the south side, the infantry waded the stream and took their post, holding it through the night. The crossing was never used.

But note the consequences of this use of scout cars. The cavalry umpire, just after contact, asked the commander of the 1st Squadron what measures he had taken to inform his main body of his situation. He replied, "I have reported my location and the situation but have not yet received acknowledgment. They have taken my scout cars with the other column, so I can't use one of



The Cavalry Fight at McBride Ford.

them as courier." And a few minutes later the commander of the 2d Squadron answered in similar language, "My radio is out, my scout cars are detached, I have only the mounted messenger."

The 1st Squadron (Blue), on gaining the rim, continued on the Ochillee Road. The tail of the column had just reached the top of the slope when the point, a mile more advanced, came in contact with the Red cavalry advance guard, dismounted and opened fire. The Blue point was facing southwest but, owing to a sharp bend in the road, the remainder of the column was marching southeast. The Blue Commander intent on holding what he had gained, reinforced his point first and started to send light machine guns to the east to cover his left flank, but this last move was too late. For the 2d Squadron (Red), leaving only a platoon with two light machine guns as a fire pivot, circled at a gallop to the east and north, then formed in two waves to the west and charged.

There is an open field here, and the defilade is very slight; the whole maneuver was plainly visible to the mounted umpire. But the Blue advance guard, lying down and engaged in its fire fight, saw nothing of it. It was only when the advance guard commander stood up to report his dispositions to the umpire that he saw the galloping lines two hundred yards to his left rear. Farther to the Blue rear, the remainder of the leading troop was just dismounting to occupy the crest to the east, on which crest there was no observation. Only a few scattered shots were fired before the leading Blue troop was ridden over and, with considerable loss in men and horses, swept back several hundred yards on the rear troop and machine guns.

These last, having dismounted behind ground difficult for mounted action, held. The Red advance was halted and the Blue infantry assured at least a toehold on the south bank.

The Red cavalry dismounted and developed the Blue position. Leaving patrols in contact, it then withdrew to cover. Its commander at this time was flirting with the

idea of leading it across the next crossing above, which, as has been noted before, was secured to the Reds by the scout cars and infantry. His decision to hold what he had until the arrival of his infantry was probably wise, but it is interesting to speculate what might have happened had he acted on his first impulse. For the north end of that crossing is within two hundred yards of the only road available to the Blue motorized infantry in its movement to McBride Ford, and but a few hundred yards farther from the position of the Blue battery.

This battery, following the cavalry, went into action on the north side of the stream: to fire from the south bank it would have to be placed practically on the front lines. Its observation was with the cavalry, but its radio was temperamental, and communication was delayed. It had no effect on the cavalry action, but later supported effectively the infantry defense.

The Blue infantry, one battalion, arrived a few minutes before the Red. Its two-wheel drive trucks stalled on the steep, sandy slope of the south bank and the infantry made the last half mile on foot, taking over the bridgehead from the cavalry. Leaving its heavy machine guns to support the infantry, the 1st Squadron then withdrew to protect with one troop the bridge itself and the road to the front lines. The remaining troop was sent to the north bank to cover the flanks and rear.

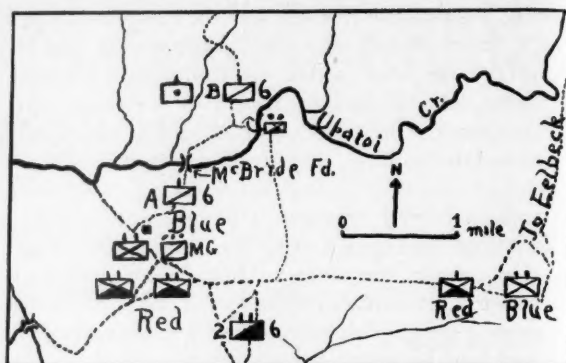
The 2d Squadron (Red), attacked in conjunction with its infantry and on the right flank. Dismounted on the heavily timbered slope, it penetrated to the road leading to the bridge among the Blue infantry trucks and light tanks. In the meantime, the Blue threat from the direction of Eelbeck was developing slowly, opposed by one Red infantry company. The 2d Squadron was used during the remainder of the day and night to cover this flank. It was engaged several times, making some captures, including the two Blue scout cars.

During the night, Blue was directed to withdraw to the north bank. The movement was completed without detection by Red. The 1st Squadron reconnoitered the new infantry position, covered the withdrawal across the Upatoi from positions on the north bank, held the crossing after the withdrawal and maintained standing patrols covering five other possible fording points during the rest of the night.

The problem ended in the morning, after Red had failed in a first attempt at crossing, with the Blue cavalry moving to the east to uncover the infantry position.

COMMENTS

1. The more rapid advance of the Blue cavalry, as compared with the Red, may be explained partly by the fact that, while road distances to the objective were almost exactly equal, the ground on the north was more favorable to rapid movement. With the exception of the hill south of McBride Ford, the route of the 1st Squadron was a gentle and uninterrupted down slope to the Upatoi. The Southern Cavalry, on the contrary, had several quite abrupt hills to surmount.



Situation at 7:00 P. M.

However, it is considered that a more cogent reason can be found in the missions assigned the two squadrons; the Northern Cavalry was told definitely to seize the objective; the Southern was given reconnaissance and covering missions. No criticism is implied, both missions were proper and in accordance with the situation, but the Blue mission would naturally induce a faster advance.

2. It is more difficult to find justification for the use made of the scout cars. The scout car is a cavalry weapon and a very essential weapon under the conditions of modern warfare. It should be left under control of the cavalry commander and assist directly in the accomplishment of the missions assigned the cavalry. Its principal functions are found in distant reconnaissance and communication—it might be said that the scout car bears the same relation to the horse cavalry that cavalry bears to infantry. There is no objection to its being used in an emergency to seize an objective, or to its being reinforced by infantry in reconnaissance cars and trucks for this purpose, provided it is so used as part of the cavalry under the cavalry commander and in furtherance of the cavalry mission. Used as they were, the cavalry was badly crippled and their detachment accomplished nothing of any consequence. It may be said that either side directing its scout cars on McBride Ford (the other side failing to do so) would have secured its objective.

3. The Blue Cavalry Commander on one occasion was slow in protecting his flank. The author can sympathize with him in this, for he himself was caught in a similar situation a day or two later. With these tiny peace-time troops it is difficult to detach a patrol or two and have anything left. Mounts and orderlies must be furnished for reserve officers and umpires and the 6th Cavalry was already short of horses and over machine gunned in proportion to its rifle strength, reducing still further the number of scouts available. The machine guns, both heavy and light, were a potent argument when the fire fight started but on the march sometimes gave the impression of a convoy.

4. But note a successful mounted attack. Later, there were others. Opportunities for this form of action are frequent when cavalry is operating against cavalry, or even against infantry in open warfare situations, but our

present doctrines are not likely to encourage such use of our squadrons. We discard the saber and speak of Cavalry as "Mobile Fire Power." Europeans write saying that cavalry has disappeared from the battlefield and we interpret it as meaning that a trooper will no longer fight mounted. It means nothing of the sort. What it does mean is that masses of cavalry acting mounted will not be used to decide the infantry battle by shock. That use of cavalry was obsolescent a hundred years ago; it is a doctrine to which we have never subscribed. I hope we will never see the day when one of our platoons, caught by opposing cavalry at too close quarters to dismount, must turn tail and run because it has never been taught to fight mounted.

5. After the 1st Squadron was relieved by the infantry, the greater part of it was held in the narrow bridgehead. A few infantry automatic rifles could have been used for local defense of the crossing and the cavalry released for flank protection. Upatoi Creek had several crossings between McBride and Eelbeck, and one of these was already in the hands of the Reds.

6. Some rather startling implications are contained in one of the plans of the Blue Infantry Commander. I am speaking of the one involving the movement of his entire truck column to a flank through Eelbeck while his cavalry held the pivot at McBride Ford, a complete reversal of our usual conception of the rôles of the two arms. However, it is a perfectly logical idea if you assume, as he did, that the entrucked infantry is the more mobile arm of the two.

Undoubtedly it is so under certain conditions and up to a certain point, that point being the place where the foot soldier disembarks. He is then reduced to a snail's pace. The combination of doughboy and truck has little *battlefield* mobility. This was shown in the case of the battalion actually sent through Eelbeck; its progress was painfully slow and it had little effect on the action.

And I imagine the infantry sent on an isolated mission miles away from support must have rather a lost feeling. Its trucks can not be maneuvered as led horses are maneuvered; they are very vulnerable. Destroy them, and the command is hours instead of minutes from support. A truck maneuver without a strong covering force is too risky, too likely to bring disaster.

What will this covering force be? Mechanized cavalry in our service. The Blue Commander evidently had something like this in mind when he appropriated the cavalry scout cars.

7. The idea of a movement of all the infantry through Eelbeck is more enticing than the decision actually made

of splitting the regiment. If used aggressively, the regiment, acting as a unit from a flank should have been able to draw off sufficient Reds to enable the cavalry to hold McBride Ford, and the Blues might have held possession of both crossings. But the infantry would have been without artillery support; the single battery on hand was behind the cavalry.

8. Generally speaking, and with the exception of the use of the scout cars noted above, the infantry commanders understood the functions of cavalry and its rôle in the action of the combined arms. The missions assigned were appropriate to the situation. I believe we can thank our service schools for this knowledge. Twenty-five years ago it did not exist; an officer knew his own arm, but no other. Now, throughout the Army, our field officers have at least the theoretical knowledge necessary to direct a team of the combined arms, and to supply it. Our next step should be in the direction of practical application of this knowledge; we need more maneuvers.

9. The handling of their units by the squadron commanders was excellent. Their actions were in all cases prompt, aggressive, and suitable to the situation and to the missions assigned them. Here we may again congratulate ourselves. We are learning to apply the knowledge gained in the schools. This, also, has not always been true. I remember seeing a brigade commander keep his troops halted in column on the road for two hours while he painfully sweated out a halt order according to Hoyle and "The Field Service Regulations," with an umpire sitting beside him to criticize the form of the order, not the handling of the troops.

I remember, also, from ten years back, some pungent remarks by a colonel of cavalry, "I can do nothing. My squadron commanders have just come from Leavenworth. When I tell them to do something they run off under a tree and write a formal field order with headings and maps and paragraphs. When that is done, the emergency is past."

10. A feature of the problem was the enthusiastic response given and the interest displayed by members of all organizations to the demands made on them. This was commented upon by all who witnessed the actions of the troops. Of course, we expect discipline and effort to carry out orders at all times, but there is a marked difference between compliance given as a result of discipline and training and that stimulated as well by personal interest. For the 6th Cavalry I can say that in this, as in subsequent problems, the regiment displayed splendid and intelligent loyalty, coöperation and *esprit de corps*.

(Part II, A Combined Brigade Maneuver, will appear in the September-October number)

Anti-Aircraft Action of the Cavalry Light Machine Gun

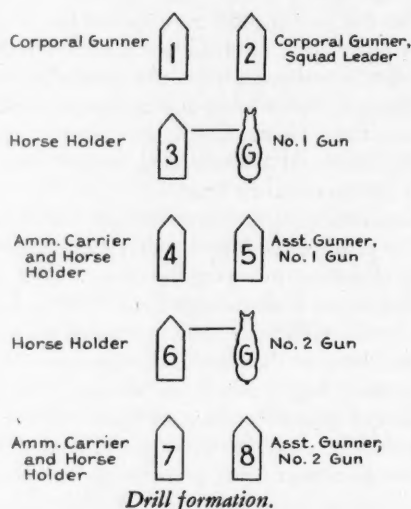
By SECOND LIEUTENANT JAMES B. CORBETT, 5th Cavalry

IT is essential that the Cavalry squadron, acting alone without accompanying heavy machine guns, have an active as well as a passive defense against air attack. The passive defense is well known to all cavalrymen—dispersion. The active defense is to be found in the light machine gun.

At present it is impossible for the light machine gun to lay antiaircraft fire even with the new improved tripod, which, incidentally, does not meet all the requirements necessary for accurate firing but is a gigantic improvement over the old tin wishbone. The gun could lay antiaircraft fire if some method were devised for raising the front leg of the tripod sufficient for high-angled fire. The pack horse is carrying a near maximum load, therefore it is necessary to use some part of the present load in order to gain this needed elevation. If the pack saddle is removed from the horse and the front leg of the tripod placed on the pack as shown in the accompanying picture, all the above requirements are met. Extreme caution must be exercised in the handling of the pack. If, through carelessness or negligence, the pack is sprung and replaced on the horse, some organization is going to have a horse with a sore back. This, as we know, is an irreplaceable though not a permanent loss but is entirely unnecessary. Too much emphasis cannot be placed on the diligent handling of the pack. The pack saddle does not have to be handled like an egg but it can not be thrown around and remain intact.

There are two kinds of antiaircraft action, waiting and immediate. Waiting action is used in defense of bridgeheads, short defiles, etc. Immediate action can take place anywhere and demands antiaircraft fire RIGHT NOW. It is not essential in a waiting action for a detailed drill in order to place the guns in antiaircraft firing position.

There is usually more than sufficient time to locate and set up all guns to the best advantage. In immediate action the requirements are different. Speed is essential. The following drill was worked out by the Light Machine-Gun Platoon, Troop F, 5th Cavalry, and proved satisfactory. There is little chance that the formation for



the unit would be other than column of twos for the march, so the drill was designed for this formation only. With very little ingenuity it could be changed to apply to any formation.

In the following plate the numbers will indicate the men. At the command "Airplane—FIRE," Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 5 dismount. No 3 turns his pack horse to the right, away from the column and holds him close to the



Removing and placing gun, tripod and pack in position.

halter bridle. No. 4 gathers up the led horses of Nos. 5, 3, 1, and 2, in that order. No. 2 moves to the right of the pack horse, removes the gun and tripod and places them on the ground assembled. No. 1 moves to the left of the pack horse and frees the cinchas on that side. No. 5 moves to the right of the pack horse and, when No. 2 has cleared, Nos. 5 and 1 remove the pack saddle and place it on the ground in front of No. 2. When the saddle has been removed, No. 3 leads the pack horse away. As soon as the pack saddle is on the ground, No. 2 places the front leg of the tripod on the saddle. In the meantime, No. 1 removes an ammunition box from the saddle, takes out a belt and inserts the brass tag in the belt feedway. No. 2 loads and commences firing. As soon as practicable, No. 7 relieves No. 4 of two of his led horses and the squad, under the ranking member, moves to cover or disperses as the situation dictates. Total time necessary from the command

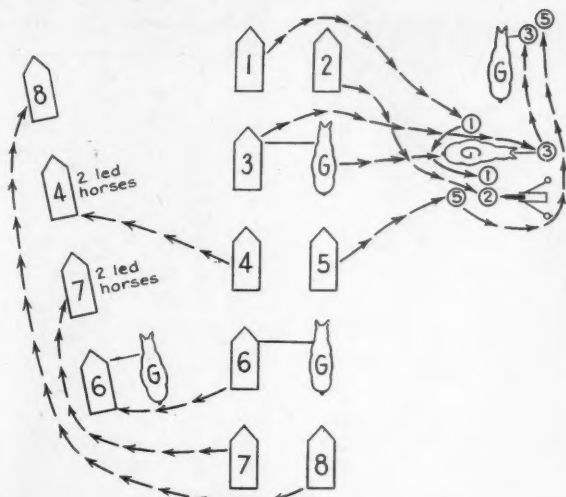


Front leg of tripod resting on pack.

"Airplane—FIRE," until the gun actually fires, fifteen seconds. At the command, "Out of Action," the pack animal saddled and packed in the normal procedure.

In a waiting action all the guns in a platoon may be placed in the antiaircraft firing position. In immediate action only two guns in a four-gun platoon can be placed in this position with the present squad formation.

When the gun is in position the front leg of the tripod is approximately horizontal and flat along the crest of the pack. The two rear legs of the tripod are actually touch-



Squad movement in immediate action.

ing the pack and are points of support. The gunner is directly behind the gun in the sitting position. The assistant gunner, No. 1, is on his left.

The belt should be loaded with every fifth round a tracer. A special ammunition box distinctly marked; for example, a two-inch white stripe around the center of the box, should be filled with loaded belts containing the required number of tracers. This would tend to eliminate any chance for error on the part of No. 1 in loading the gun with a belt not containing tracers.

And now just a word concerning the training of the light machine-gun platoons. Developments such as the above, whether or not they prove successful under all conditions and over a period of time, can be attained with much less trouble and with far more precision if the guns of the squadron are trained as a troop, where everybody thinks like machine guns.

An Improved Type of Officer's Shelter Tent

By CAPTAIN GYLES MERRILL, Cavalry

THE fact that the present issue shelter tent affords inadequate shelter has long been recognized. This is particularly a handicap in the case of the troop officer who has no other shelter provided for him in campaign and must use his shelter tent as a place in which to work on administrative and tactical matters as well as a sleeping quarters. It was with a view to alleviating this situation and providing the troop officer with a shelter tent that would properly accommodate his bedding roll, permit him to sit erect in the tent and completely close the tent to keep out rain, as well as permit the use of a light at night, that the proposed tent was developed.

The essential characteristics of an officer's shelter tent are as follows:

- (1) It must be light enough to be carried on the saddle.
- (2) The tent, as thus carried on the saddle, must provide shelter for one officer without the necessity of doubling up with another officer to make a complete tent.
- (3) The single tent must have enough floor space to accommodate the officer's bedding roll, which measures about 78"x34" when unrolled, and some articles of equipment.

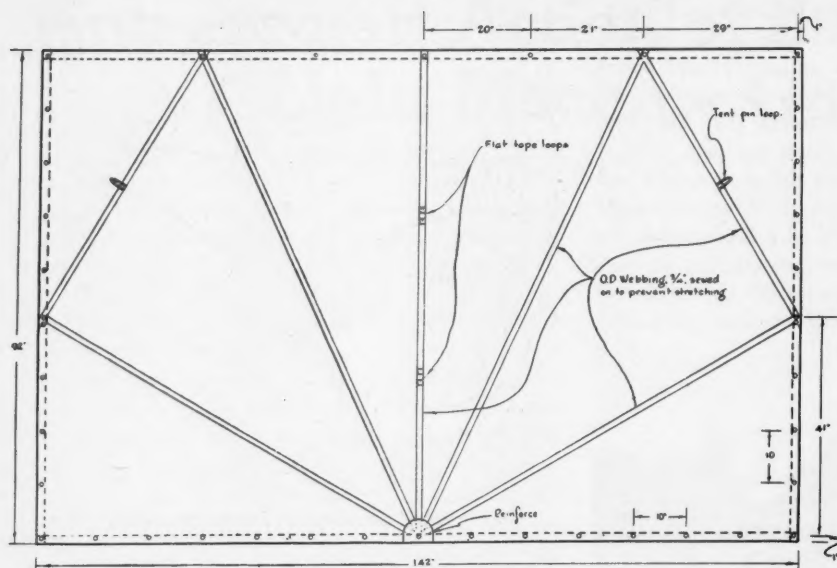


FIG. 1—Sketch of tent proper.

Required.

- 1 Guy line—5/32" sash cord, 18' long, loop in one end.
 - 9 Footstops—5/32" sash cord. Placed in four corners and at lower ends of O.D. webbing.
 - 6 Door fasteners—5/32" sash cord, 10 1/2" long. One end sewed to outside of tent just above grommets on right side of front.
 - 40 Grommets—No. 1 teethed.
- Seams in material to overlap on outside of tent away from center front reinforce, to shed rain. A hem 1 1/2" wide around tent, folded over a 1" webbing in the center of which the grommets are placed, bringing the centers of the grommets 1" from edge of tent.

- (4) The single tent must have enough height to permit an officer to sit erect on his unrolled bedding roll.
- (5) The tent must be so constructed that it can be completely closed all around.

The shelter tent proper consists of a rectangular piece of light waterproof fabric 142"x92", with grommets

When telescoped, it measures 27 1/2"x1". (See Figs. 3 and 4.)

Two tent ropes of 5/32" sash cord, 18 feet long each with a loop in one end, are furnished per tent. One of these ropes is to be used as a lacing when two tents are joined together.

Ten tent pins should be carried. These may be the ordinary wooden shelter tent pins, but aluminum alloy pins of a fluted design, 7" long, with a hook at the top are more satisfactory.

When pitched as a single tent, it is 71" high at the center of the front and slopes downward to both sides and the rear, the front being vertical. (See Fig. 5.) It is 82" long across the front and 57" wide from front to rear on the ground. Eight tent pins are used, one at each corner and one at the center of each side. If a pole is used, an additional pin is required for the guy rope. The pole may be dispensed with if a tree or telegraph pole is available in

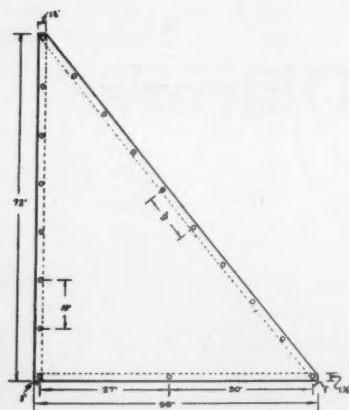


FIG. 2—Sketch of end piece.

Required for end piece.

- 1 Guy line 5/32" sash cord, 18' long, loop in one end. To be used as lacing.
 - 3 Footstops—5/32" sash cord. Placed in bottom grommets.
 - 6 Door fasteners—5/32" sash cord, 10 1/2" long. One end sewed just above each of the six middle grommets on the 72" side.
 - 18 Grommets—No. 1, teethed.
- Seam in material to run vertically. A hem 1 1/2" wide around piece, folded over a 1" webbing in the center of which the grommets are placed, bringing the center of the grommets 1" from edge of piece.

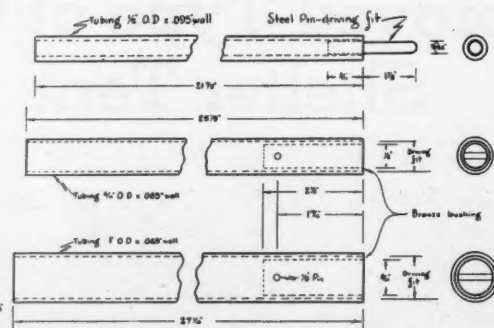


FIG. 3—Sketch of tent pole.

which case the guy rope is thrown over a branch or tied high up on the pole to support the peak of the tent. (See Fig. 6.)

As carried on the saddle the equipment consists of the tent proper, one rope and ten pins (weight 5 pounds, 7 ounces), and if the wheeled transportation containing the bedding roll does not get up, the use of a tree or improvised pole must always be resorted to, as the end piece one guy rope and tent pole are carried in the officer's bedding roll. This is done to keep the weight carried on the horse at the absolute minimum and still provide adequate shelter for the officer even though separated from the transportation. The saving in weight carried on the horse is 3 pounds, 1 ounce over the present issue equipment.

The single tent is very easily and quickly pitched, one man being able to do it in less time than two men can pitch the issue shelter tent.

In a hot climate where protection from the sun or light showers only is needed, the tent may be pitched as a wedge tent, open at both ends for ventilation. When so pitched the tent would be 5 feet high at the ridge, 7½ feet long and 6½ feet wide on the ground with room enough for a canvas cot. The end piece may be used to partially close one end. (See Figs. 7 and 8.)

Or the tent may be used as an elevated fly with a relatively flat slope by tying it between trees and guying the corners out. So pitched, it would cover an area about 10 feet by 7½ feet.

Two tents, with their end pieces, may be so laced together as to form a larger double tent. (See Figs. 9 and 10.) This double tent is 71" high at the ridge, the ridge is 71" long, and the tent covers a ground area 9½ feet square. There is ample room in this tent for two canvas cots and the equipment of two officers. There is enough head room to permit sitting erect on the cot even when an aisle is left between the two cots.

A list of the weights of the proposed equipment is shown below, together with the weights of the present issue equipment for comparison:

	Proposed Equipment		Present Issue	
	lbs.	oz.	lbs.	oz.
Tent	4	6	5	6
End piece	0	15		
Poles	(1)	1 6	(2)	1 12
Pins	(10)	0 14		1 4
Ropes	(2)	0 6		0 2
Total	7	15	8	8

A number of tents of the proposed type were made up



FIG. 4—Proposed equipment, both rolled up and displayed.

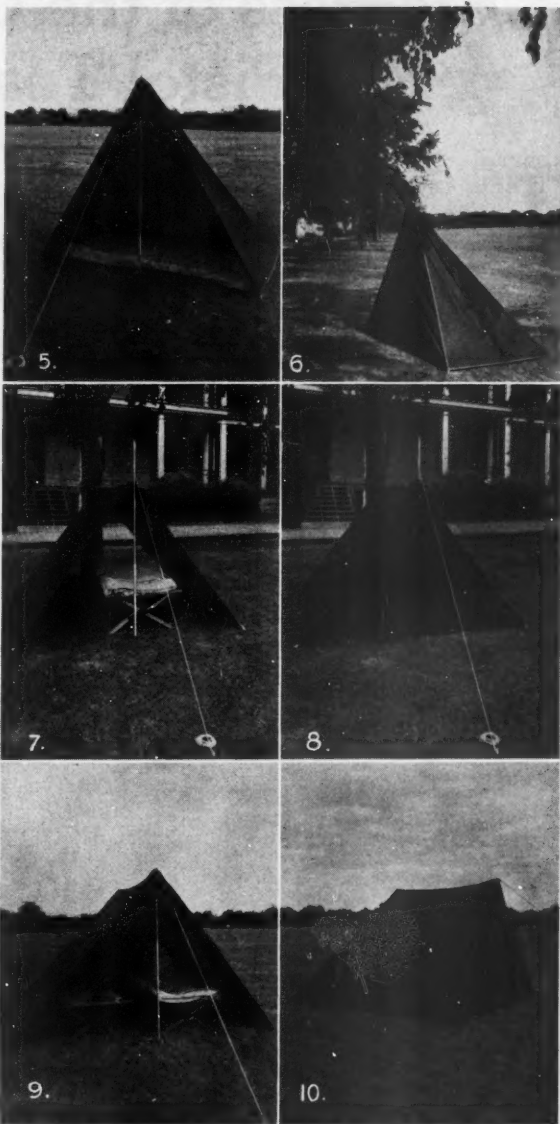


FIG. 5—Single tent open, using pole.

FIG. 6—Single tent closed, using tree for support.

FIG. 7—Single tent pitched as wedge tent.

FIG. 8—Wedge tent, using end piece to partly close one end.

FIG. 9—Two tents laced together to form double tent.

FIG. 10—Double tent, showing end pieces closing front.

at Fort Riley and used by various officers on fishing trips, marches, and maneuvers; some of the tents were made of shelter tent duck, some of light canvas, and four tents were made of a light waterproof fabric sold commercially under the name of "Tanalite." It is believed that airplane cloth, suitably dyed and dry waterproofed, would be an ideal material for the tent. The material should weigh about 4½ ounces per square yard.

These tents have been used in high winds and heavy rains and have been found to afford adequate protection and comfort in all cases. Every officer who used them reported favorably and recommended their adoption.

Progress of the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team Tryouts

BY CAPTAIN THOMAS J. HEAVEY, 3rd Cavalry, Team Captain

THE Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team Squad, consisting of eleven officers and forty-three enlisted men, assembled at Erie Ordnance Depot, adjacent to Camp Perry, June 12, 1935. Since that time the squad has undergone an intensive period of competitive shooting, preliminary to selecting a rifle and pistol team to represent the cavalry in the National Matches. Weather conditions to date have been exceptionally good for training purposes, in that all types of climatic conditions have been encountered.

During the month of June, the weather for the most part, was unseasonably cold, with plenty of rain, fog, wind, and many cloudy days. Conditions of this sort may well be expected in September during the National Matches, so the experience gained should prove valuable. The month of July brought hot days with frequent rains, which usually occurred during the afternoon or night.

Shooting conditions during this period of time were favorable except that heavy winds prevailed most of the time. The winds on the Perry range are probably more variable than at any other large rifle range in the country, and it is not unusual for the wind to shift from a point and a half right to that much left, in firing at 1,000 yards.

The first period of training of the squad was mostly free shooting for the purpose of determining the zero of the rifles, and, incidentally, to condition the shooters. A competitor's shoulder must be tough to withstand the shock of sixty to one hundred rounds of National Match ammunition daily.

Following this period of free shooting, the squad undertook the various competitions which had been previously announced. As might be expected with a squad of over fifty shooting members, it was difficult to predict the winners of these matches. In many cases inexperienced green



CAVALRY RIFLE AND PISTOL TEAM SQUAD, 1935

First row, from left to right: Pfc. E. W. Hendrickson, 11th Cav.; Sgt. W. A. Locke, 12th Cav.; 1st Sgt. W. E. Fitzgerald, 2d Cav. Brig.; Pfc. J. A. Morton, 14th Cav.; Pfc. H. O. Phelps, 8th Cav.; Jimmy Heavey; Pfc. F. E. Gormley, 3d Cav.; Sgt. R. Dedmon, 12th Cav.; St. Sgt. W. T. McGimpsey, 1st Cav. (Mecz); Corp. A. F. Kellerman, 1st Cav. (Mecz); Tech. Sgt. B. Schwartz, 7th Cav.

Second row, from left to right: Sgt. E. Yeszski, 3d Cav.; Sgt. D. Lubrano, 13th Cav.; Sgt. F. Rubino, 13th Cav.; 1st Lt. C. A. Thorp, 1st Cav. (Mecz); 1st Lt. C. A. Burcham, 14th Cav.; Capt. H. A. Boone, 5th Cav.; 2d Lt. E. M. Cahill, 3d Cav.; 1st Lt. G. A. Williams, 2d Cav. Brig.; 1st Lt. G. A. Rehm, 14th Cav. (Team Coach); Captain T. J. Heavey, 3d Cav. (Team Captain); 1st Lt. P. McK. Martin, 13th Cav. (Team Coach); 1st Lt. H. W. Stevenson, 13th Cav.; 1st Lt. S. L. Myers, 12th Cav.; 2d Lt. D. E. Still, 4th Cav.; Sgt. W. D. Reynolds, 2d Cav.; Sgt. J. B. Jensen, Cav. Sch. Det.; Sgt. V. Shantz, 11th Cav.; Pvt. F. Bartnikaitis, 13th Cavalry; Sgt. G. G. Wicker, 2d Cav.

Third row, from left to right: Corp. W. H. Endicott, 14th Cav.; Pfc. J. D. Lingo, 1st Cav. (Mecz); Pfc. L. Weber, 14th Cav.; Sgt. H. P. Ernst, 5th Cav.; Sgt. O. D. Milton, 8th Cav.; Corp. R. N. Brewer, 6th Cav.; Sgt. W. R. Robinette, 6th Cav.; Pvt. A. Chilgren, 3d Cav.; Sgt. W. P. Rogers, 4th Cav.; Sgt. E. Towne, 3d Cav.; Pvt. E. Silvers, 6th Cav.; Pvt. J. J. Jacobs, 13th Cav.; Sgt. R. R. Grider, 14th Cav.; Corp. M. Stickel, 2d Cav.; Pvt. B. A. Kortuem, 2d Cav. Brig.; Sgt. W. G. Hamel, 4th Cav.; Corp. A. F. Rogers, 13th Cav.

Fourth row, from left to right: Sgt. J. J. Campbell, 7th Cav.; Pfc. O. H. Thomas, 14th Cav.; Pvt. G. W. Gutza, 14th Cav.; Sgt. B. Sanders, 14th Cav.; Sgt. C. J. Leach, 8th Cav.; Pvt. W. J. Bugnacki, 3d Cav.; Sgt. S. Blazejevski, 3d Cav.; Tech. Sgt. L. H. Hedglin, 1st Cav. (Mecz); Pfc. E. Solie, 7th Cav.; Pvt. T. H. Penniston, Cav. Sch. Det.; Corp. P. J. Mattson, 12th Cav.; Sgt. J. P. Lawrence, 5th Cav.; Pvt. W. Stockton, 14th Cav.; Pvt. C. E. Burlingham, 14th Cav.; Pvt. V. Adrian, 14th Cav.; Pvt. W. Hixson, 14th Cav.; Pvt. G. Clifton, 14th Cav.

Fifth row, from left to right: Pvt. P. Peterson, 14th Cav.; Pvt. W. S. Lambert, 14th Cav.; Pvt. J. H. Paulsgrove, 14th Cav.; Pvt. L. Lukas, 14th Cav.; Pvt. A. Cox, 14th Cav.; Pvt. B. Bixler, 14th Cav.; Corp. O. D. Lockwood, 14th Cav.; Corp. F. Kloss, 14th Cav.; Pfc. W. W. Waliszewski, 14th Cav.; Pvt. F. Robertson, 14th Cav.; Pvt. S. Gerdes, 14th Cav.; Pvt. E. V. Bachtell, 14th Cav.; Pvt. W. Richmond, 14th Cav.; Pvt. W. Metzner, 14th Cav.; Pvt. R. Hill, 14th Cav.; Pvt. E. Byrd, 14th Cav.; Pvt. H. Varner, 14th Cav.

shots stole the show from the better shots of other years. Competition has been exceptionally keen this year, and, in every case, the winner of any of the Chief of Cavalry's Matches barely topped second place by a single point, or little more.

The results of these matches, which commenced July 1st, and were completed July 25th, follows:

1. THE KROMER RIFLE TROPHY MATCH, this match consisted of ten times over the National Match Course, and was open to all rifle shots attending the tryouts. The trophy for the match was presented by Major General Leon B. Kromer, Chief of Cavalry. This match was won by Sergeant Jens B. Jensen, Cavalry School Detachment, who, in addition to winning the trophy, received a gold medal. Total score fired by Sergeant Jensen was 2800 out of a possible 3000. Second place was won by Corporal A. F. Kellerman, 1st Cavalry, (Mecz), and third place by Technical Sergeant L. H. Hedglin, 1st Cavalry (Mecz). A silver medal was awarded the winner of second place; and a bronze medal, the winner of third place.

2. THE REGIMENTAL TEAM MATCH (Rifle). This match consisted of one firing over the National Match Course. The match was open to teams of two men from each cavalry regiment represented at the Cavalry Rifle Team Tryouts. This match was hotly contested throughout, the leaders changing position at each range, and was not settled until the last shot was fired. The match, and the Regimental Team Trophy, was won by the 5th Cavalry Team, composed of Captain Howard A. Boone and Sergeant H. P. Ernst, with a score of 553 out of a possible 600 points. Second place was won by the 12th Cavalry, represented by First Lieutenant Samuel L. Myers and Sergeant R. C. Dedmon. Third place was won by the 1st Cavalry (Mecz) (second team), consisting of First Lieutenant Claud A. Thorp and Staff Sergeant W. T. McGimpsey. Gold, silver, and bronze medals were received by winners of first, second, and third places respectively.

3. INDIVIDUAL 1,000-YARD CHAMPIONSHIP MATCH. This match consisted of twenty shots at 1,000 yards on the C target, no sighting shots, time limit of one and one-half minutes per shot, no coaching permitted. It was won by Sergeant R. R. Grider, 14th Cavalry, with a score of 96 out of a possible 100 points. He received the Fort Bliss Trophy and a gold medal. Second place was won by Private J. J. Jacobs, 13th Cavalry, who received a silver medal. Third place, a bronze medal, was won by Sergeant Jens B. Jensen, Cavalry School Detachment.

4. INDIVIDUAL RAPID FIRE CHAMPIONSHIP MATCH. The course for this match consisted of two scores of ten shots each at 200 and 300 yards, fired on the A target, in the prescribed time limit of one minute at 200 yards, and one minute and ten seconds at 300 yards. The winner was Sergeant S. Blazejevski, 3rd Cavalry, with a score of 193 out of 200, who received the rapid fire

championship trophy, and a gold medal. Second place was won by First Lieutenant Clyde A. Burchman, 14th Cavalry, who received a silver medal. Technical Sergeant B. Schwartz, 7th Cavalry, was awarded a bronze medal for third place.

5. INDIVIDUAL OFF-HAND CHAMPIONSHIP MATCH. This match consisted of twenty shots fired off-hand, at 200 hundred yards on the A target during a time limit of one minute per shot. (The sling was not permitted in any team competitions when firing in the standing position.) It was won by Sergeant W. G. Hamel, 4th Cavalry, with a score of 94 out of possible 100 points. He received the trophy presented by the Cavalry School, and a gold medal. Second place was won by Corporal A. F. Kellerman, 1st Cavalry (Mecz), who received a silver medal. Sergeant J. J. Campbell, 7th Cavalry, received a bronze medal for third place.

6. THE HOLBROOK TROPHY MATCH. The course for this match consisted of ten times over the National Match course, and was fired concurrently with the Kromer Trophy Match. It was open to new shots only; that is, competitors who had never previously fired on a team in the National Matches. It was won by Staff Sergeant W. T. McGimpsey, 1st Cavalry (Mecz.), who received the Holbrook Trophy and a gold medal.

7. CAVALRY INDIVIDUAL RIFLE TROPHY MATCH. This match consisted of one firing over the National Rifle Match Course, with the service rifle. It was open to all candidates attending the tryouts, and was won by Sergeant E. Yeszerski, 3rd Cav., Ft. Myer, Va., with a total score of 287 out of a possible 300 points. He received the Cavalry Individual Trophy, which was presented the Cavalry Rifle Team in 1921, by the United States Cavalry Association, and a gold medal. Second place was won by Sergeant W. D. Reynolds, 2d Cavalry, who received a silver medal. Sergeant F. Rubin, 13th Cav., received a bronze medal for third place.

8. THE OSCAR KOCH TROPHY MATCH. The course for this match comprised all record firing up to the completion of the Chief of Cavalry's Matches. All candidates attending the Cavalry Rifle Team Tryouts automatically entered this match. Points won by contestants were based on "bonehead" action by the individual. For example, firing on the wrong target counted one point for each shot so fired. Using the wrong rifle was worth a point. Taking windage in the wrong direction won a point. Setting sights incorrectly, assuming the rapid fire position with the piece locked, and any other dumb action on the part of the firer was duly considered by the team captain and coach, and awards issued. This match was won by Sergeant W. R. Robinette, 6th Cavalry, but his total of ten points awarded, was far from a walkaway victory. Second place fell to Second Lieutenant Daniel E. Still, 4th Cavalry, with seven points. Third place was awarded Private First Class E. W. Hendrickson, 11th Cavalry, with five points. A suitable leather medal is being prepared for presentation to Sergeant Robinette at a



MEDAL AND TROPHY WINNERS, CHIEF OF CAVALRY MATCHES, 1935

Sitting, left to right: Sgt. S. Blazejevski, 3d Cav., winner Rapid Fire Championship Match; member winning Regimental Pistol Team; Sgt. E. Yeszski, 3d Cav., winner Individual Rifle Championship Match; member winning Regimental Pistol Team; Sgt. E. P. Ernst, 5th Cav., member winning Regimental Rifle Team; Capt. H. A. Boone, 5th Cav., member winning Regimental Rifle Team; Sgt. W. R. Robinette, 6th Cav., winner Koch Trophy Match; Sgt. Jens B. Jensen, Cav. Sch. Det., winner Kromer Rifle Trophy Match; third place Kromer Pistol Trophy Match; third place 1,000 Yard Individual Championship Match; Corp. A. F. Kellerman, 1st Cav. (Mecz), winner Kromer Pistol Trophy Match; second place Individual Off-Hand Match; second place Kromer Rifle Trophy Match; St. Sgt. W. T. McGimpsey, 1st Cav. (Mecz), winner Holbrook Trophy Match; third place Regimental Rifle Team Match; Sgt. R. R. Grider, 14th Cav., winner 1,000 yard Individual Trophy Match; Sgt. W. G. Hamel, 4th Cav., winner Individual Off-Hand Championship Match.

Standing, left to right: Sgt. J. J. Campbell, 7th Cav., third place Individual Off-Hand Match; second place Regimental Pistol Team Match; Tech. Sgt. L. H. Hedglin, 1st Cav. (Mecz), third place Kromer Rifle Trophy Match; 1st Sgt. W. E. Fitzgerald, 2d Cav. Brig., second place Kromer Pistol Trophy Match; 1st Lt. C. A. Thorp, 1st Cav. (Mecz), third place Regimental Rifle Team Match; 1st Lt. G. A. Rehm, 14th Cav., third place Regimental Pistol Team Match; 1st Lt. C. A. Burcham, 14th Cav., second place individual Rapid Fire Championship Match; Capt. T. J. Heavey, 3d Cav., Captain, Cavalry Rifle Team, 1935; Pvt. J. J. Jacobs, 13th Cav., second place 1,000 Yard Individual Championship Match; 1st Lt. S. L. Myers, 12th Cav., second place Regimental Rifle Team Match; Tech. Sgt. B. Schwartz, 7th Cav., third place Individual Rapid Fire Championship Match; Sgt. R. C. Dedmon, 12th Cav., second place Regimental Rifle Team Match; Pvt. 1st cl. E. Solie, 7th Cav., second place, Regimental Pistol Team Match.

later date. This trophy was presented by Captain Oscar Koch, 13th Cavalry, who served as "Statistician" for the Cavalry Rifle Team Squad, in 1923.

9. REGIMENTAL PISTOL TEAM MATCH. The course for this match consisted of one firing of the National Pistol Match Course, and was eligible to teams of two pistol firers from each cavalry regiment represented at the tryout. The trophy for the match was presented by the 1st Cavalry, (Mecz). It was won by the 3rd Cavalry Team, composed of Sergeant E. Yeszski, 3rd Cavalry, Ft. Myer, Va., and Sergeant S. Blazejevski, 3rd Cavalry, Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont. This team received the regimental pistol team trophy, (1st Cavalry Trophy), and gold medals. Second place was won by the 7th Cavalry, represented by Sergeant J. J. Campbell and Private E. N. Solie, who received silver medals. Third place, bronze medal, was won by the 14th Cavalry, represented by First Lieutenants George A. Rehm and Clyde A. Burcham.

10. INDIVIDUAL PISTOL CHAMPIONSHIP MATCH. The course for this match consisted of eight times over the National Pistol Match Course, and was open to all candidates attending the Cavalry Pistol Team tryouts. It was won by Corporal A. F. Kellerman, 1st Cavalry, (Mecz), who received the Kromer Pistol Trophy, and a gold medal. Second place was won by First Sergeant W. E. Fitzgerald, 2d Cavalry Brigade, who re-

ceived a silver medal. Sergeant Jens B. Jensen, Cavalry School Detachment, received a bronze medal for third place.

All medals won by individuals in these matches become permanent property of the winner. All trophies won by regimental teams or individuals are to be held by the winning regiment or organization for one year, or until the next Cavalry Rifle Team tryout.

Following the above matches, an informal individual handicap match was held, competitors of the Cavalry and Engineer Teams being eligible to compete. The course of fire consisted of one firing of the National Match course. Competitors were handicapped according to their average scores up to the date of the firing of the match, July 26th. The match was won by Private Watson of the Engineer Team with a score of 283, and a handicap of 21, which gave him a total of 304. Second place was won by Private E. Silvers, 6th Cavalry, with a score of 283, and a handicap of 20, which gave a total of 303. Third place was won by Corporal P. J. Mattson, 12th Cavalry, with a score of 283, and a handicap of 16, which gave him a total of 299. Two other cavalymen made a gallant effort in this match. Technical Sergeant Hedglin making a flat score of 292 out of a possible 300, and Sergeant R. R. Grider making a flat score of 290 out of a possible 300. However, these almost record breaking scores could not hold up against the handicaps.

(Continued on page 20)

Isl
cor
mo
rec
the
the
I
ani
me
tem
its
sco
with
it w
N
Me
quan
ron
whi
nois
Clar
Aug
a cor
twee
tical
was
tice
lowa
much
H
and
Chie
as th
distan
tion a
and o
move
Th

Date
May 31
June 1
June 2
June 3
June 4
June 5
June 6
June 7
June 8
June 9
June 10
June 13

June 14
June 15
June 16

The Concentration of the 14th Cavalry

By CAPTAIN ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, 14TH CAVALRY

THAT "it's always fair weather" is a rollicking affirmation, but it was put to a rude test during June in course of a march of concentration to Rock Island, Illinois, by the 14th Cavalry. Conditions encountered made the march not only the longest but the most rigorous undertaken by the mounted service in recent years, for deluging rain dogged the footsteps of the two elements of the regiment throughout most of the four hundred and sixty odd miles covered.

Discomforting as these circumstances were to men and animals, they served, nevertheless, toward the achievement of the basic purpose of the "hike," for in addition to tempering the metal of regimental morale, they subjected its new equipment in modified saddles, motor trucks and scout cars to the proof of unusually hard field service, with the result that the march was not only successful; it was highly instructive as to personnel and matériel.

Not since 1920 when, following its service on the Mexican border, regimental headquarters, the headquarters troop, the machine gun troop and the 2d Squadron were ordered to Fort Des Moines, Iowa, for station, while the 1st Squadron was sent to Fort Sheridan, Illinois, has the 14th Cavalry been together as a unit. Colonel Clarence Lininger, soon after assuming command in August of last year, took steps, therefore, to effect in 1935 a concentration of the regiment at some point midway between the two posts with a view of combining with tactical training a reawakening of its *esprit-de-corps*. He was encouraged in this by the excellent results of a practice march made in October of last year to Fort Dodge, Iowa, and return by the Fort Des Moines elements when much interesting work was done in cavalry-aviation liaison.

His project found prompt favor with both the Sixth and Seventh Corps Area Commanders as well as with the Chief of Cavalry, and Rock Island Arsenal was approved as the objective, for it promised both in facilities and distance to make an ideal rendezvous point. Authorization and allotment of funds were received early in May and on the 31st of that month both commands began the movement from their respective stations.

Their itineraries and daily marches were:

Date	From	To	Miles	Rate m.p.h.
May 31st	Ft. Des Moines	Mitchellville, Ia.	21.3	4½
June 1st	Mitchellville	Newton, Ia.	17	5
June 2d	In Camp at Newton.			
June 3d	Newton	Grinnell, Ia.	19	5
June 4th	Grinnell	Victor, Ia.	23	5½
June 5th	Victor	Homestead, Ia.	24	5½
June 6th	Homestead	Iowa City, Ia.	22	5½
June 7	Iowa City	West Liberty, Ia.	17	5
June 8th	West Liberty	Walcott, Ia.	28	5½
June 9th	Walcott	Rock Island Arsenal	13	5
June 10th, 11th and 12th	In Camp at Rock Island Arsenal.			
June 13th	Rock Island Arsenal.	De Witt, Ia.	22	5½
June 14th	De Witt	Maquoketa, Ia.	20	5½
June 15th	Maquoketa	Dubuque, Ia.	36	5½
June 16th and 17th	In Camp at Dubuque.			

For first time in fifteen years, regiment unites for successful practice march and tactical exercises.

Date	From	To	Miles	Rate m.p.h.
June 18th	Dubuque	Cascade, Ia.	26	5
June 19th	Cascade	Cedar Rapids, Ia.	47	5½
June 20th	Cedar Rapids	Amana, Ia.	20	5½
June 21st	Amana	Victor	26.6	5½
June 22d	Victor	Grinnell	23	5½
June 23d	In Camp at Grinnell.			
June 24th	Grinnell	Newton	19	5½
June 25th	Newton	Ft. Des Moines	43	5½
Total Distance,			466.9 miles.	

Date	From	To	Miles	Rate m.p.h.
May 31st	Ft. Sheridan	Barrington, Ill.	22	5
June 1st	Barrington	St. Charles, Ill.	24	5
June 2d	In Camp at St. Charles.			
June 3d	St. Charles	De Kalb, Ill.	24	5½
June 4th	De Kalb	Rochelle, Ill.	18	5½
June 5th	Rochelle	Dixon, Ill.	27	5½
June 6th	Dixon	Erie, Ill.	38	5½
June 7th	Erie	Rock Island Arsenal	32	5½
June 8th to 12th	In Camp at Rock Island Arsenal.			
June 13th	Rock Island Arsenal.	De Witt, Ia.	22	5½
June 14th	De Witt	Maquoketa, Ia.	20	5½
June 15th	Maquoketa	Dubuque, Ia.	36	5½
June 16th and 17th	In Camp at Dubuque.			
June 18th	Dubuque	Stockton, Ill.	49	5½
June 19th	Stockton	Freeport, Ill.	23	5½
June 20th	Freeport	Belvidere, Ill.	43	5½
June 21st	Belvidere	Ft. Sheridan	61	5½
Total Distance,			439 miles.	

Both commands followed main automobile highways, the Fort Des Moines troops under Colonel Lininger, going via National Highway No. 6 and the 1st Squadron commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Harry D. Chamberlin, taking for the greater part of their way Highway No. 86. Starting their march at 1:00 P.M., May 31st, the former ran into showers as soon as they cleared the post gate and necessarily made slow progress until they had left the city limits of Des Moines behind. Then they split column and assumed a steady rate. The latter force also met rain early on their march.

Save on days when the downpour was excessive, the road shoulders proved generally practicable, permitting of trotting for regulation periods. Frequently they were soft and soon became soggy, especially for horses in the rear of the column. Animals grew tired as they slipped and slid, while at times these paths were found to be burrowed with hidden holes and actually dangerous. Due to excellent march discipline, however, and prompt passing back of a word of caution, no casualties from this source were suffered. In general, mounted troops under normal conditions can make good use of shoulders such as characterize most motor roads through the Middle West and can make regulation time on them or better. At night they are best avoided.

Concrete pavement, on the other hand, offers no detriment, provided trotting is restricted to a slow pace and not prolonged. This was resorted to whenever:

- a. Shoulders were dangerous,
- b. On steep up-grades,
- c. To avoid crushed rock which, with soft mud in a horse's foot, was likely to be picked up and cause lameness,
- d. Through urban districts.

On the return march from Cascade to Cedar Rapids the Fort Des Moines column used the pavement freely—perhaps one-fifth of the time—in course of nearly fifty miles under a torrential rain and with no ill effect. It is believed that an occasional slow trot on pavement is preferable to continual walking. This is particularly true toward the conclusion of a march, when men are fatigued and likely to slouch in their saddles.

Grazing was resorted to at every halt. The grass along the highways was mostly blue grass, orchard grass and clover, all in luxuriant growth. The clover was avoided whenever wet. However, it is not believed to be dangerous where present in limited quantity; that is, not more than twenty per cent proportion. Only three cases of colic occurred. These were extremely mild and of short duration. The affected animals were led for a day and then returned to full duty.

Watering on the march was ordinarily from canvas troughs. Occasionally water was found in small streams at convenient locations. It was frequently used to cool out feet and tendons of horses showing indications of leg weariness, mild lameness or a tendency to stumble. Results were gratifying. After five or ten minutes of this treatment, such animals showed marked improvement and were soon going sound again. Three horses showed symptoms of slight exhaustion. These were bathed at the poll with cold water from a canteen. All responded to this remedy and continued on the march.

Very few shoes were lost, though the heavy mud and railroad crossings tended to loosen some. When horses have been running unshod, either all around or behind only, they should be shod at least twice before starting on extended field service. By shoeing at least twice, time is afforded for them to become accustomed again to the weight. Moreover, the second shoeing insures a better fit and obviates the likelihood of taking the road with feet tender or in such condition that even the best of workmanship can not prevent casting with the probability of leaving the hoof so damaged that immediate re-shoeing is difficult, if not impossible.

It is the conclusion of the Regimental Veterinarian, too, that it is ill-advised to begin a march of more than two or three days' duration with horses unshod behind, unless the going is to be on soft earth relatively free of stone. Other than fitting shoes closely on the inner quarters, no special shoeing was used. A normal shoe properly fitted on the inner side appeared more practical for the field than

weighted or special shoes. Good, normal shoeing in conjunction with proper conditioning before the march appears to be the solution.

Heavy traffic at high speed was, of course, the rule on the highways. While this necessitated constant vigilance, it gave less trouble than was expected. A trooper with a red flag preceded the column at about two hundred yards, while a similar flag was borne at the head of each troop. The tail gate of the last trailer bore a large white canvas with the word SLOW in large black letters. Motorists were usually courteous, slowing down at these indications, though an occasional speed demon would try to crash through the split column in utter disregard of some swaying pack animal or led horse.

Since traffic in war time will be rigidly controlled, cavalry in the future can count upon using main highways as they have done in the past. Such roads are usually the most direct from point to point and split columns afford sufficient space for motor vehicles at reasonable speeds. But mounted troops must never relax their march discipline and the traffic must be controlled.

Both commands conducted their daily marches as if in the presence of an enemy. A situation was assumed and a written march order issued in conformity therewith: Advance guards, ordinarily of one troop, preceded the main body by not less than eight hundred yards. Connecting files were furnished by the next element in rear. The smoothness with which bounds were made and signals transmitted showed notable improvement as the march progressed, until, by the time the columns approached Rock Island, the troops were performing these duties with celerity and skill. Flank patrolling, however, was merely simulated to spare horseflesh, being reserved for the formal tactical exercises to come.

Utmost use, on the other hand, was made of the new armored scout cars with which the regiment has recently been equipped. Four of these, the assignment of the Fort Des Moines contingent, were with that column. The other two were with the 1st Squadron. Both Colonel Lininger and Lieutenant Colonel Chamberlin sent their cars well in advance daily, on missions of offense or defense, filling rôles of delaying forces in position, as threats from a flank or on scouting or reconnoitering missions, as the case might be. In all of these duties, the cars were well concealed; marching columns usually missed discovering them until well within range of the car's guns.

The experience gained with these scout cars was probably the most valuable lesson of the "hike." First of all, mud on ordinary dirt roads offers them no obstacle. Their weight is excessive, however, and they are cumbersome to turn about on a road. Whenever a car is close to soft going, one or more of its crew should alight and guide the driver, for his vision is too limited to admit of trusting to ground he himself can not see and in which his car might become hopelessly mired.

These vehicles eliminate much wear and tear of horses on patrol, they provide excellent protection for the front

and flanks of a cavalry column and they solve the problem of defense against hostile mechanized forces. They are extremely valuable, too, as agencies for medium distance reconnaissance and can render great service when used for checking up on designated phase lines the locations of reconnoitering and counter-reconnoitering detachments.

But short of actual combat, they are particularly valuable in the transmission of radio messages. Experience in radio communication with the present equipment was prompt and effective up to twenty-five or thirty miles in open country. In wooded areas effectiveness was cut down to two and one-half or three miles. It is believed that having but one car per section equipped with sets is too limiting. All cars should be so provided. Of course, it is realized that to do so might tend to complicate the divisional net. In any event, pack sets are still necessary.

During the march to Rock Island Arsenal, Major General Leon B. Kromer visited each contingent, inspecting in particular the condition of the animals.

The public showed lively interest in the troops, especially in the smaller towns. Many visitors flocked through the camps. The German-American populations of eastern Iowa were particularly cordial. The apogee of interest and enthusiasm was reached at the tri-cities, Davenport, Rock Island and Moline. As the regiment marched through Davenport very early on the morning of June 9th, the route was thronged. Persons of all ages were filling windows and doorsteps, many of them waving flags.

As the Fort Des Moines column approached the interstate bridge over the Mississippi, the 1st Squadron with Lieutenant Colonel Chamberlin at its head was drawn up and rendered the honors to the regimental commander. This compliment was appreciated by Colonel Lininger's entire following, and, now united, the 14th Cavalry, with its band leading the way, marched proudly across to the Illinois side and went smartly into camp on the Rock Island Arsenal grounds.

This was the first time in the history of the "Tri-Cities" that the community had experienced a cavalry regiment in its midst. Its welcome was unstinted. The Arsenal garrison, from Colonel Alexander B. Gillespie down, was untiring in service and hospitalities, while citizens and civic organizations of all three cities were lavish with their attentions to all. Radiant weather prevailed, so that the three-day stay in the veritable park of this Government reservation seemed too short.

Yet the sojourn there was not an idle one. Formal guard mount and retreat were held daily, a tactical exercise was held involving a dismounted attack against an outlined enemy, and finally a horse show and gymkana was given at which Mayor A. Henry Arp of Moline, Mayor Charles F. Carpenter of East Moline, Colonel Gillespie and some ten thousand other persons attended.

At 7:00 A.M., June 13th, the complete regiment bade farewell to the "Tri-Cities" and marched to De Witt, Iowa. As it approached that town, an exercise was held for the tactical inspection of the command before the

Assistant Chief of Staff, G-3, Seventh Corps Area, Lieutenant Colonel Forrest E. Williford, General Staff.

An enemy rear guard, outlined, was assumed to be holding a delaying position along the southern exits of De Witt. With his staff and squadron commanders, Colonel Lininger made his reconnaissance from a knoll about one mile south of the hostile position and then issued his attack order, placing the machine gun troop supported by one troop, 1st Squadron, as pivot near the knoll, one troop in reserve, while the 2d Squadron, preceded by scout cars, made the envelopment, some three and one-half miles via side roads, to turn the enemy right. This scheme was performed punctually and it was Lieutenant Colonel Williford's opinion that, scout cars, when, as in this instance, correctly used, add much to ease and security of a march and to the formulations of plans in an attack.

From De Witt to Dubuque the route led over abruptly rolling country. Long pulls up steep grades became frequent, and when the horses were inspected the morning after arrival in Dubuque, some symptoms of slight stiffness were noted. However, this condition soon disappeared. There were practically no cinch sores. The Phillips pack equipment gave satisfaction as usual and the only contusions from pack loads were in cases where the pack animal lacked preliminary conditioning or where the pack had not been properly fitted.

At this camp Lieutenant Colonel Chamberlin concluded his demonstrations to the officers of the regiment on the advantages of the forward seat. That position in the saddle now is uniform throughout the 14th Cavalry and is being taught to recruits as they join.

The departure of the commands on their return to their respective stations took place in Dubuque on the morning of June 18th. The 1st Squadron, crossing the Mississippi, started eastward; the remainder of the regiment ascended the long hill leading to the Dubuque plateau and the west. Rain, as if to mark the regrets at the parting, began falling again and soon was coming down with a vengeance. That night in Cascade, Iowa, it fell in torrents, but this did not prevent the regiment from making on the following day against a strong wind, and with an advance guard out, a march of nearly fifty miles, from Cascade to Cedar Rapids. It could have continued a like distance again had an emergency demanded. As for the 1st Squadron, it gave up tactical formations while homeward bound because of the weather and made a forced march on the last lap into Fort Sheridan. Between Freeport and Belvidere, Ill., it did a "leap frog" jump. Leaving all its baggage in camp at Freeport, half the command rode, while the other half, taking their saddles and equipment with them, moved to the half-way point in trucks. When all had assembled there, lunch was served and the horses watered and fed. Then the half that had entrucked in the morning mounted and rode in the afternoon. The trucks proceeded on to the night's campsite, deposited their loads there and then returned to the half-

way point to pick up and bring into camp those who had ridden that morning. This made easy an exceptionally long march. By lightening loads through use of its motor transportation, cavalry, if not in contact with the enemy, can increase greatly the length and speed of its marches and still keep men and animals fit for action.

The Fort Des Moines command on its last lap made a night march. This was another test of stamina and march discipline; it was also a trial of the effect of pavement.

That afternoon, in Newton, Iowa, its troops paraded before National Commander Belgrano, of the American Legion, who was attending a state gathering in that town. Shortly after 8:00 P.M., "Boots and Saddles" was suddenly sounded and camp was quickly struck. Column of route was formed behind an advance guard of one troop and the final jump began. A secondary but paved highway was followed to avoid the heaviest motor traffic and only the regulation halts were made. The movement was devoid of incident. Such lame horses as were being led showed improvement rather than otherwise, seeming to be benefitted by the fresh night air and frequent leading. There were no indications of ill effect from the pavement and all were going strong when the Fort Des Moines gate was passed at 5:50 A.M., and the command was home again.

A few details only remain to be recounted.

In the matter of feeding, both oats and hay were purchased locally. The latter was generally timothy or light clover and timothy mixed and uniformly of good quality. Waste was avoided by having picket line guards continually rake the hay beneath the line and kept available to the horses, thus evading loss and contamination. Salt was at hand at all times.

It was the practice in all troops the moment their mounts entered camp and were tied on the picket line to slacken girths without removing saddle and to massage legs vigorously for ten or fifteen minutes. Saddles were not removed until the men were ready to begin grooming, which was always begun by hand rubbing of backs to insure against puffs. Salt bathing of backs for a time before the "hike" was found efficacious in preventing sore backs; this should not be done unless completed before the start of a "hike," however. Contusions and swellings were covered with cold packs or with white lotion followed by cold packs.

The total number of animal casualties carded on emergency veterinary tags numbered thirty-three. Of these, fifteen were disease cases, such as dermatitis, podermatitis, circumscripta. The other eighteen were injuries, for the most part abrasions of the back or withers, or wounds resulting from kicks. Cases of dermatitis occurring on the posterior surface of pasterns were frequently the effect of the rain and mud and it was found that massaging with the hand gave better results for cleaning the pastern region than by having recourse to a brush, which appeared to cause irritation.

A limited number of minor abrasions developed fol-

lowing the night march; none of these were serious and all healed completely within a short time, having responded to drying mixtures. Of these one was methylene blue and tannic acid in alcohol. Saturated solutions of picric acid also proved beneficial.

Ointments and oils were used only during rest periods. Wounds resulting from interference were covered for a few days, after which they gave little or no trouble. This was probably due to the disappearance of leg weariness.

No animal deaths occurred during the march, nor since as the result of it. The total number of evacuations was seventeen, and of these only one was absolutely necessary. All the others could have continued with the column in case of emergency. And, too, it should be stated that this number included several mounts valid but rendered superfluous by reason of their riders being ordered to Camp Perry after the march had begun.

The new trailer with which the cavalry is now equipped proved entirely satisfactory, both to the 1st Squadron which used it as such behind motor trucks and to the regiment less the 1st Squadron where it was mule-drawn. On paved roads one pair of mules per vehicle was found sufficient.

Memories of the march to Rock Island and return will go down in the annals of the 14th Cavalry. If its equipment and matériel were found by this experience to be sound and satisfactory, not less gratifying was the test of personnel. Morale was splendid, even under the most adverse conditions. The regiment has found itself again and, proud in the consciousness of its capabilities, it is now ready for anything. For this reason it remains firm in its conviction that "it's always fair weather when good fellows get together."

Progress of Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team Tryouts

(Continued from page 16)

The Rifle Team Squad is now entering the final grind, preparatory to making the actual shooting team in the Matches a team that the Cavalry as a whole may well be proud of. Morale is high, scores are steadily improving, and the competitors are getting down to serious work.

The Pistol Team Squad is progressing excellently. Again we have a potential winning team, if we can get going at the right time.

The success of teams in the National Matches in most instances is traceable to morale and *esprit*. The team officials are striving to keep the morale up and to maintain the Cavalry *esprit*. The support of our regimental commanders can be of great assistance, and, although it is without doubt present, the competitor who is striving to make the team now, can exert greater efforts if he hears with his own ears, or sees with his own eyes that the "outfit" is behind him. We are half way through the siege now, and going strong. May we keep up the pace.

Graduation Events, The Cavalry School, 1935

By MAJOR KENT C. LAMBERT, 9th Cavalry

THE graduation of the classes of the Cavalry School for the School Year 1934-1935 had many added and unique features which made it a most interesting climax for students and permanent personnel.

Among the special features were: The added month to the usual nine months' course to allow for the scheduled seventeen-day march of the Cavalry School Brigade to Fort Leavenworth and return, during which the students were to ride their regularly assigned remounts as part of the Remount Competition; the last graduation in which Brigadier General Abraham G. Lott exercised command as the Commandant of the Cavalry School; the presence of Major General Leon B. Kromer, Chief of Cavalry, who gave a stirring address to the graduating classes; and the greatest flood in the history of Fort Riley, which, because of its sudden appearance and destructive results, altered the planned program materially.

The rampage of the Republican and Kansas rivers will no doubt be of interest to the many former Riley residents. Although flood warnings were issued daily as the Republican gathered force and swept down its valley, no one at Fort Riley had any idea of what these warnings meant. Aviators from Marshall Field made constant reconnaissance of the crest as it approached Fort Riley on June 2d. As it passed Milford, carrying the railroad station with it, everyone who could do so gathered at the concrete bridge and reservoir hill to watch the spectacle. At 11:00 A.M., June 3rd, the crest reached Washington Street Bridge, which held, but the river left its banks and rushed across the sand dunes, race track, hippodrome, the island, the air field, Whiskey Lake, and on—and Fort Riley was isolated from the west, south, and east. The planes from Marshall Field had established a field on the plateau in the vicinity of North Gate. The families from Marshall Field, race track pasture, and the regimental farms were rescued and moved into the post. Many of the civilian employees of the Quartermaster, Post Exchange, Post Headquarters, and telephone operators who were caught on the Fort Riley side of the flood were the week-end guests of the post personnel.

Naturally, the graduation events scheduled in the Hippodrome for June 3rd were transferred to the West Hall. The Hippodrome was suitable only for a sea horse, being eight feet under water, but was identifiable by a sign reading "Reserved for the Department of Horsemanship."

The water began its fall on June 5th, and on June 7th the concrete bridge was open to Junction City. Highway 40 to Manhattan was opened on June 10th.

The remount competition, which is an annual graduation event consisting of schooling, use of arms, cross



FORT RILEY FLOOD SCENES DURING GRADUATION PERIOD.

1. Kansas River. Looking toward Marshall Field.
2. C.C.C. Camp near Engineer Bridge.
3. Union Pacific track, and hay sheds.
4. Pump House area. Race track stable at right center.

country, and jumping was this year augmented by a march and field service phase. This added test was to demonstrate the capabilities of the remount to take his place in the column of a marching and maneuvering brigade, and to determine the standards that we may reasonably expect of the young horse just finishing his nine months' training period. As stated previously, it had been planned that this phase would be held as part of the seventeen-day march and maneuver of the Cavalry School Brigade, June 5th to June 21st, inclusive; but, because of the flood, this plan had to be altered. School troops had to be held in readiness for relief and rehabilitation work.

Therefore, to accomplish this march phase test and provide the students with the field training contemplated in the original plan, a provisional squadron composed of the Brigade Headquarters Troop and a Student Troop was organized.

The Student Troop was composed of four platoons, one each from the Advanced Equitation Class and Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class, and two from the Regular Class. Each student started the march on his regularly assigned remount, and cared for his mount and himself as a private soldier in the field.

A total of forty-five remounts made the march. The majority were horses whose training had started as four-year olds, three as five, and one as a three-year-old in September, 1934. Eleven were equipped with the modified McClellan saddle, the remainder with the officers' field saddle.

The plans contemplated a march of about 300 miles in eight marching days out of the eleven days scheduled for the field, particular emphasis to be given on marching gaits as taught by the Cavalry School. This method advocates the squadron as the marching unit and the platoon as the regulating unit.

Following is a short summary of the marches made:

- June 11th. Left Fort Riley at 8:00 A.M.; arrived in bivouac, Garrison, at 1:30 P.M. Distance, 28 miles.
- June 12th. Left Garrison at 5:45 A.M.; arrived in bivouac, near Marysville, at 1:00 P.M. Distance, 35.2 miles.
- June 13th. Left bivouac at 5:43 A.M.; arrived at Wymore, Nebraska, 11:25 A.M. Distance 29 miles.
Left bivouac 8:00 P.M.; arrived in bivouac, Pickrell, at 1:00 A.M., June 14th. Distance, 22.8 miles.
Total distance for June 13th-14th, 51.8 miles.
- June 14th. Rest.
- June 15th. Left Pickrell at 5:00 A.M.; arrived in bivouac 6 miles southwest of Lincoln, Nebraska, at 11:00 A.M. Distance, 32 miles.
- June 16th. Rest.
- June 17th. Left bivouac at 5:08 A.M.; arrived in bivouac, Pickrell, at 10:52 A.M. Distance, 32 miles.
Left Pickrell at 6:39 P.M.; arrived in bivouac, Wymore, at 10:52 P.M. Distance, 22.8 miles.
Total distance for day, 54.8 miles.
- June 18th. Rest.
- June 19th. Left Wymore at 5:04 A.M.; arrived in bivouac, Marysville at 9:45 A.M. Distance, 27.3 miles.
- June 20th. Left Marysville at 4:50 A.M.; arrived in bivouac, Garrison, at 10:50 A.M. Distance, 34 miles.
- June 21st. Left Garrison at 5:04 A.M.; arrived at Fort Riley at 9:04 A.M. Distance, 28 miles.
Total distance, 290.3 miles.

During this march phase an accurate check was kept by a board of officers, consisting of Lieutenant Colonel Jonathan M. Wainwright, Assistant Commandant; Major Calvin De Witt, Chief, Department of Horsemanship, and Major George L. Caldwell, V.C., Department of Horsemanship, of the condition of each horse after each day's march, and preceding the next, with an allotted value gained for each day completed under the saddle, or lost due to lameness or sore back.

At the completion of this march phase, the score of each horse was added to the scores already obtained in the preceding phases of the Remount Competition, and the winner designated accordingly.

A summary of the graduation events, with the winners follows:

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, ADVANCED CHARGER SCHOOLING PHASE

Place	Rider	Mount
1st	First Lieut. Henri Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Podhorski
2d	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry	Recoil
3d	First Lieut. Leander LaC. Doan, Cavalry	Adalid
4th	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry	Jinwich

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, ADVANCED CHARGER CROSS COUNTRY

1st	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry	Recoil
2d	First Lieut. Leander LaC. Doan, Cavalry	Adalid
3d	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Podhorski
4th	First Lieut. Edwin H. J. Carns, Cavalry	Reno Duce

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, ADVANCED CHARGER JUMPING PHASE

1st	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Podhorski
2d	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry	Jinwich
3d	First Lieut. Leander LaC. Doan, Cavalry	Adalid
4th	First Lieut. Zachery W. Moores, Cavalry	Flitter

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, ADVANCED CHARGER COMPETITION

1st	First Lieut. Leander LaC. Doan, Cavalry	Adalid
1st	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Podhorski
(Tied for First Place)		
2d	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry	Recoil
3d	First Lieut. Zachery W. Moores, Cavalry	Flitter
4th	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry	Jinwich

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, CHARGER SCHOOLING PHASE

1st	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Scamps Boy
2d	First Lieut. John G. Minniece, Jr., Cavalry	Dunstan
3d	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry	Dintanita
4th	First Lieut. Edwin H. J. Carns, Cavalry	Fitz K.

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, CHARGER JUMPING PHASE

1st	First Lieut. Clarence K. Darling, Cavalry	Silver Fox
2d	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Scamps Boy
3d	First Lieut. Edwin H. J. Carns, Cavalry	Fitz K.
4th	First Lieut. Leander LaC. Doan, Cavalry	Goldseeker

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, CHARGER COMPETITION

1st	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Scamp's Boy
2d	First Lieut. John G. Minniece, Jr., Cavalry	Dunstan
3d	First Lieut. Edwin H. J. Carns, Cavalry	Fitz K.
4th	First Lieut. Leander LaC. Doan, Cavalry	Goldseeker

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT SCHOOLING PHASE

1st	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry	Anita Mentor
2d	First Lieut. Zachery W. Moores, Cavalry	Run Around
3d	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry	Frannie
4th	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Hatorda

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT OUTDOOR PHASE

1st	First Lieut. John G. Minniece, Jr., Cavalry	Latifolia
2d	First Lieut. Paul D. Harkins, Cavalry	Lady Mac
3d	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry	Anita Mentor
4th	First Lieut. Clarence K. Darling, Cavalry	Dannefred

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION

1st	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry	Anita Mentor
2d	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry	Frannie
3d	First Lieut. Zachery W. Moores, Cavalry	Run Around
4th	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Hatorda

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, POLO HORSE SCHOOLING PHASE

1st	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Florine
2d	First Lieut. Paul D. Harkins, Cavalry	Reno Dot
3d	First Lieut. Zachery W. Moores, Cavalry	Kaffrant
4th	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry	Stella Gordon

ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, POLO HORSE COMPETITION

1st	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry	Florine
2d	First Lieut. Paul D. Harkins, Cavalry	Reno Dot
3d	First Lieut. Zachery W. Moores, Cavalry	Kaffrant
4th	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry	Stella Gordon

REGULAR CLASS, REMOUNT SCHOOLING PHASE

1st	First Lieut. Chandler P. Robbins, Jr., Cav.	Tilt Top
2d	Second Lieut. O'Neill K. Kane, Cavalry	Tom Boy
3d	Second Lieut. John H. Dudley, Cavalry	Fraternity
4th	Second Lieut. James O. Curtis, Jr., Cavalry	Sally F.

REGULAR CLASS, REMOUNT OUTDOOR PHASE

1st	Second Lieut. Angelo R. Del Campo, Cav.	Irish Girl
2d	First Lieut. David A. Watt, Jr., Cavalry	Glint
3d	Second Lieut. Robert W. Porter, Jr., Cav.	Fitzota
4th	Second Lieut. Wayne J. Dunn, Cavalry	Gen. Buell

REGULAR CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION

1st	Second Lieut. Franklin F. Wing, Jr., Cav.	High Spot
2d	Second Lieut. John H. Dudley, Cavalry	Fraternity
3d	Second Lieut. O'Neill K. Kane, Cavalry	Tom Boy
4th	Second Lieut. James O. Curtis, Jr., Cavalry	Sally F.

REGULAR CLASS, JUMPERS

1st	Second Lieut. James O. Curtis, Jr., Cavalry	Muskogee
2d	Second Lieut. Cornelius A. Lichirie, Cavalry	Maher
3d	Second Lieut. Donald M. Schorr, Cavalry	Flurry Knox
4th	Second Lieut. Henry B. Croswell, Cavalry	Big Red

NATIONAL GUARD AND RESERVE TROOP OFFICERS' CLASS, PISTOL COMPETITION

1st	Second Lieut. Walter R. Tayloe, Cavalry-Reserve.	
2d	Captain R. J. Cowles, 113th Cavalry, Iowa National Guard.	
3d	First Lieut. L. K. Kurland, Cavalry-Reserve.	
4th	First Lieut. W. P. Winchester, Cavalry-Reserve.	

NATIONAL GUARD AND RESERVE TROOP OFFICERS' CLASS, CROSS-COUNTRY AND JUMPING COMPETITION

1st	First Lieut. H. K. Henry, Cav.-Res.	Blaze
2d	Captain J. F. Kellogg, Cav.-Res.	Cashton
3d	Captain R. C. Hall, Cav.-Res.	Miss Beason
4th	Second Lieut. J. R. Graham, Cav.-Res.	Big Red

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, CHARGER SCHOOLING PHASE

1st	Corporal Samuel Carter, M.G. Troop, 10th Cavalry	Dintate
2d	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry	Talus
3d	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Chaffinch
4th	Corporal Robert W. Georisch, Troop E, 13th Cavalry	Fanchion

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, CHARGER JUMPING PHASE

1st	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Chaffinch
2d	Corporal Clifford Butler, Troop B, 3d Cav.	King Kong
3d	Sergeant James Martin, Troop A, 11th Cav.	Sharper
4th	Corporal Avery G. Mills, Troop F, 13th Cav.	Square Smith

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, CHARGER COMPETITION

1st	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Chaffinch
2d	Sergeant James Martin, Troop A, 11th Cav.	Sharper
3d	Corporal Samuel Carter, M.G. Troop, 10th Cavalry	Dintate
4th	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry	Talus

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION, FIRST GROUP SCHOOLING PHASE

1st	Corporal Samuel Carter, M.G. Troop, 10th Cavalry	Skeeter
2d	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Bathing Suit
3d	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry	Broncho Dan
4th	Corporal Clifford Butler, Troop B, 3d Cav.	Hamilburr

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION, FIRST GROUP OUTDOOR PHASE

1st	Sergeant Roy Childers, M.G. Troop, 2d Cav.	Stock Meter
2d	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Bathing Suit
3d	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry	Broncho Dan
4th	Corporal Tillman A. Kelley, Troop A, 7th Cavalry	Miss Gibbon

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION, FIRST GROUP

1st	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry	Broncho Dan
2d	Corporal Samuel Carter, M.G. Troop, 10th Cavalry	Skeeter
3d	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Bathing Suit
4th	Sergeant James Martin, Troop A, 11th Cav.	Mad Neill

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION, SECOND GROUP SCHOOLING PHASE

1st	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry	Nora Dinter
2d	Corporal Avery G. Mills, Troop F, 13th Cav.	Riggs Mentor
3d	Sergeant James Martin, Troop A, 11th Cav.	Aryan
4th	Sergeant Roy Childers, M.G. Troop, 2d Cav.	Sage Brush

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION, SECOND GROUP OUTDOOR PHASE

1st	Sergeant James Martin, Troop A, 11th Cav.	Aryan
2d	Sergeant Roy Childers, M.G. Troop, 2d Cav.	Sage Brush
3d	Corporal Avery G. Mills, Troop F, 13th Cavalry	Riggs Mentor
4th	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Trumps

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, REMOUNT COMPETITION, SECOND GROUP

1st	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry	Nora Dinter
2d	Corporal Avery G. Mills, Troop F, 13th Cav.	Riggs Mentor
3d	Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cav.	Trumps
4th	Sergeant Roy Childers, M.G. Troop, 2d Cav.	Sage Brush

REGULAR CLASS, NIGHT RIDE

1st	Second Lieut. Glenn F. Rogers, Cavalry	Metalic
2d	Second Lieut. Franklin F. Wing, Cavalry	Bermuda
3d	Second Lieut. Robert W. Porter, Jr., Cavalry	Shamrock
4th	Second Lieut. Cornelius A. Lichirie, Cavalry	Craig

NATIONAL GUARD AND RESERVE TROOP OFFICERS' CLASS, NIGHT RIDE

1st	Captain C. R. Bevington, Cavalry, Idaho National Guard.	
2d	First Lieut. H. K. Henry, Cavalry-Reserve.	
3d	First Lieut. L. K. Kurland, Cavalry-Reserve.	
4th	First Lieut. T. M. Spieldoch, Cavalry-Reserve.	

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS, NIGHT RIDE

1st	Corporal Robert Goerisch, Troop E, 13th Cavalry.	
2d	Sergeant Roy Childers, M.G. Troop, 2d Cavalry.	
3d	Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry.	
4th	Sergeant James Martin, Troop A, 11th Cavalry.	

THE LORILLARD CUP

To the member of the Advanced Equitation Class with the best aggregate score made in graduation events on his assigned advanced charger, charger, green polo horse, and remount.

1st	First Lieut. Henri A. Luebberrmann, Cavalry.
2d	First Lieut. Milton A. Acklen, Cavalry.
3d	First Lieut. William H. Hunter, Cavalry.
4th	First Lieut. Zachery W. Moores, Cavalry.

REGULAR CLASS, ALL AROUND EQUESTRIAN CHAMPIONSHIP TROPHY

To the member of the Regular Class, having the highest number of points as determined from the following table:

	Possible Score	Coefficient	Possible Points
Remount Competition	1,410	1	1,410
Jumper Competition	100	2	200
Night Ride	500	1	500
Standard Stakes	250	1	250

Maximum Total 2,360

- 1st Second Lieut. Franklin F. Wing, Jr., Cavalry.
 2d Second Lieut. Glenn F. Rogers, Cavalry.
 3d Second Lieut. Robert W. Porter, Jr., Cavalry.
 4th Second Lieut. Angelo R. Del Campo, Jr., Cavalry.

NONCOMMISSIONED OFFICERS' ALL AROUND EQUESTRIAN CHAMPIONSHIP

To the member of the Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class with the best aggregate score made in graduation events on his assigned charger, remount first group, and remount second group.

- 1st Sergeant James P. Owens, Troop A, 5th Cavalry.
 2d Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E, 2d Cavalry.
 3d Corporal Samuel Carter, M.G. Troop, 10th Cavalry.
 4th Corporal Avery G. Mills, Troop F, 13th Cavalry.

THE CAVALRYMAN'S BOWL

To that student of the Regular Class who has displayed the greatest proficiency in the duties of a cavalryman, as demonstrated by his work in the various activities of the School during the school year, and as determined by an examination of his record for the entire year, covering his work in all instructional departments.

- 1st Second Lieut. Robert W. Porter, Jr., Cavalry.

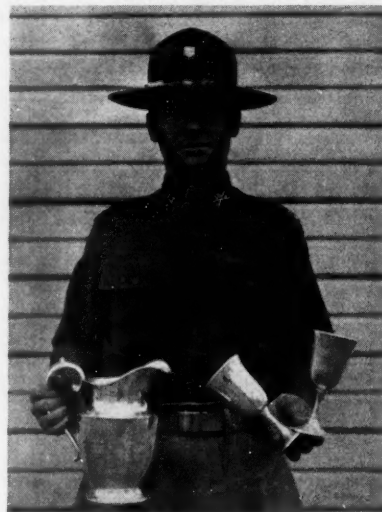
STANDARD STAKES, OPEN TO ALL OFFICERS OF THE GARRISON

- 1st First Lieut. Paul D. Harkins, Cavalry.
 2d Second Lieutenant James O. Curtis, Jr., Cavalry.
 3d First Lieut. Walter E. Finnegan, 13th Cavalry.
 4th Second Lieut. John K. Waters, Cavalry.

COMBAT LEADERSHIP TROPHY

To the officer who has demonstrated the highest efficiency in the duties of a cavalry officer of his grade, based on his individual work in all departments while a student in the National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class, The Cavalry School, with particular stress placed upon his demonstrated combat leadership.

- 1st Captain C. R. Bevington, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard.



Captain Clifford R. Bevington, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, winner of Combat Leadership Trophy and Night Ride, National Guard and Reserve Troop Officers' Class. In private life, he is a Junior High School Instructor at Gooding, Idaho.

Summer Camp of 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard

By Lieutenant Glenn Balch

IDAHO'S crack national guard horse regiment, the 116th Cavalry, 45 officers and 528 enlisted men, recently completed at the Boise barracks field one of the most successful encampments in the history of the regiment.

The 116th Cavalry's brother National Guard organizations, the 116th Engineers and the 148th Field Artillery, journeyed this year to Fort Lewis, at Seattle, Washington, there to take part in summer training maneuvers by the National Guard of four northwestern states, Washington, Oregon, Idaho, and Montana, thus leaving only the cavalry regiment to settle down for the two weeks' period, June 8th to June 22d, at the Boise Field.

A splendidly mounted regiment of natural horsemen, the 116th Cavalry in all its training has laid special emphasis on horsemanship with the purpose of keeping at a high level those essential qualities of mobility, fire power, shock, and spirit which makes the cavalry a colorful, effective branch of our national security organization.

Colonel Sam D. Hays, commanding officer of the regi-

ment, was camp commander of the encampment, and Major John D. Hood, Cavalry, regular army officer assigned to the 116th, was the camp instructor. The camp was visited by Colonel John T. Geary, C.A.C., national guard representative of the Ninth corps area, and Captain C. C. Park, Field Artillery, representing the chief of the National Guard Bureau at Washington.

Among the officers attending the camp was Captain Clifford R. Bevington, commanding Troop A, recently graduated by the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, Kansas, with high honors. A leader and a good horseman, Captain Bevington has made a fine record as a troop commander.

Intra-camp rivalry between the various troops attending the camp opened with a bang on Sunday, the second day, when the fast polo teams representing Troop A, Gooding, and Troop E, Boise, clashed in an eight-chukker battle. A spirited exhibition of the mallet sport, the game resulted in a 7-5 victory for Troop E. Playing for Troop E were Lieutenant Johnson, First Sergeant Keltner, Private Allen and Private Jacobs. Captain Bevington, Lieu-

tenant Balch, First Sergeant Cecil, and Sergeant Hudson carried the Troop A colors into the fray.

Polo is a sport which Idaho National Guardsmen take to readily and in recent years some excellent mounts, mostly privately owned, have been accumulated in the various troops. Likewise 33 head of young remounts were added to the regiment this year, some seven or eight being purchased from contract or accepted animals in camp and the remainder from Oregon dealers.

Training began early Monday morning, with the first four days being devoted to field exercises, on the sloping foothills behind Boise, in scouting, patrolling, reconnoitering, and dismounted combat. Each morning the three long lines of the squadrons rode forth, moving out from the picket lines under orders at 7:10 sharp, each squadron headed for its respective drill area for the day, and all during the forenoons the gentle bare slopes of the foothills could be seen covered with horsemen, some riding in close order, some in advance guard formations, some as scouts and patrols, some in long thin lines of foragers and still others sweeping over this swell or that ridge in pistol charges.

Friday afternoon was given over to the annual regimental field day, in which there is spirited competition among the troopers in both mounted and dismounted events for the numerous prizes and awards. Dismounted events include the two popular dashes, tugs-of-war, and a 440-yard relay. Among the mounted features are three classes of jumping, mounted wrestling, cossack racing, tugs-of-war, musical chair contests, three-gaited classes and novelty races.

When the smoke of hot rivalry had cleared away from the polo field, where the competition took place, it was found that Machine-Gun Troop, of Weiser, had won the mounted events with a score of 28. How those machine gunners did ride! Four units, Troops K, Moscow; E, Boise; A, Gooding, and F, Nampa, tied for second place with 15 points each.

In the dismounted competition, Headquarters Troop, Caldwell, won first place, with 23 points, and I, Lewiston, and K, Moscow, tied for second with 10 points each.

An exciting incident of the field day occurred when two iron-jawed horses, entered in the novelty race (wherein the various contestants draw for mounts), bolted and ended up—up-ended, too—in a big water-filled irrigation ditch, with two gigantic splashes. No one was hurt, but riders and horses received thorough soakings.

In the "best turned out mounted trooper" event, one of the most hotly contested features of the field day, First Sergeant Russell Cecil of Troop A won first place over a classy group of immaculate cavalymen and splendid horses in full-pack equipment.

The manual of arms contest went to—of all things!—a bandsman, Private Eugene Ney of Caldwell, member of the 116th Cavalry band. Private Ney can click a rifle about as well as he can blow a horn.

The annual regimental banquet was held at the Owy-

hee Hotel, Friday evening, with Lieutenant Colonel Frank Meek as toastmaster and Adjutant General M. G. McConnell the guest of honor. Spirited repartee, good food, and a generally friendly spirit of fellowship made the banquet highly enjoyable. After the customary roasting, Adjutant General McConnell, Colonel Hays, and Major Hood made short speeches.

Saturday was given over to the cleaning of equipment and inspection, Sunday was a rest day, with church conducted by Lieutenant Turner in the morning.

All officers of the regiment worked on Regimental command post problems in camp the second Monday morning under the direction of Major Hood, while the troops were moved out for drill by the noncommissioned officers.

Monday afternoon was "Governor's Day" and the entire regiment marched in review before Governor C. Ben Ross. At officers' mess that evening the Governor was the guest of honor, and was presented with a silver-mounted bridle bit purchased from regimental funds.

On Tuesday, Wednesday, and Thursday the three squadrons went out successively to solve tactical combat problems and spend a night in bivouac. The third squadron, composed of I and K Troops, under Major Frank Townley, was the first out. Major Lou Farber and his first squadron, Troops A and B, came Wednesday, and Major Clarence Martin, with E and F, made the third and final squadron maneuver on Thursday.

The problem given the squadrons was to throw out a bridgehead in front of a deep, swift-running canal for the purpose of making the bridge and river safe for the crossing of friendly troops. The problem was conducted under the direction of Major Hood, and a skeletonized enemy was represented in the field by the use of flags, blank ammunition and aerial bombs under control of the brigade staff, Major Colvard, Captain Fred Vandergraft, and Lieutenant John Walsh with a few detailed enlisted men. Lieutenant Walsh was also the provost marshal in town during the camp and the conduct of the men was generally excellent, much favorable comment in this regard coming from the civilian authorities.

The 1935 encampment attracted considerable attention from the newsreels. A Pathé News cameraman spent much time on the drill area, getting pictures of the machine-gun units going into action, of pistol charges, and general maneuvering. On one occasion a group of picked horsemen, including several Cavalry School graduates, led by Captain George Wright on a beautiful brown gelding, staged a cross-country ride for the cameraman, taking steep slides, treacherous ascents, water jumps, and hurdles at full gallop.

The highest award of the camp, the Colonel James Harris trophy given for tactical efficiency, sanitation, field training, armory drilling, camp administration, military courtesy, and military discipline, was awarded on the final Friday afternoon of the camp. It was won by the Machine-Gun troop, officered by Captain E. W. Horner,

First Lieutenant Fred D. Stover, First Lieutenant Darwin N. Hite, and Second Lieutenant John T. Jensen. This trophy is named for Colonel Jim Harris, former beloved commander of the regiment, who was killed a few years ago in an automobile accident.

Major Bob Talbot's crack baseball team from the medical detachment won the encampment baseball championship, following a hard fought round robin of close games in which the "Pill Rollers" supremacy was threat-

ened time and time again.

During the camp the regiment's fine band, in addition to playing daily for guard mounts and squadron parades, gave two concerts under the direction of Warrant Officer J. J. Smith.

And now the 116th has dispersed again, to the respective home stations in various parts of the state, for another year of armory training, where they will look forward to the next encampment of 1936.

Panama's Irregular Cavalry

By CAPTAIN MAURICE ROSE, Cavalry

THE maneuvers in the Panama Canal Department, probably the most strenuous, comprehensive, and instructive maneuvers that have ever been completed under peace-time conditions by any organization of the United States Army, are over. Organizations had been marched day and night, many day's marches were up to nearly twenty-five miles, food was limited, and hunger and privation were the order of the day, not because the service of supply had failed but because Major General Harold B. Fiske placed his command into the field on a war-time basis. War conditions existed, war rations were issued, and the command proved itself ready for—anything.

There was one element which forcibly injected itself into the picture of the Departmental maneuvers, and which through its typical cavalry activities caused Brigadier General John W. Gulick, commander of the provisional Coast Artillery Brigade, to announce in substance at the main critique that the provisional cavalry organization operating under his command had rendered invaluable assistance, convincing him that there should be a detachment of mounted troops in the Department.

It is not my intention to enter into a discussion of the entire maneuver, which lasted between three and four weeks, but rather to mention the operations which our branch is more vitally concerned with: i.e., the operations of mounted troops in the Panama Canal Department.

The enemy, commanded by Major General Lytle Brown, and consisting generally of the 14th Infantry, 33rd Infantry, 2d Field Artillery, 11th Engineers, and necessary supply units, had been disgustingly successful and our friendly troops, generally known as the 1st Provisional Coast Artillery Brigade, commanded by General Gulick, had been forced to retire to a position generally along the line extending through Cerro Corozal to the north and south and prepare for a desperate defense. The Department Commander at this time placed at the disposal of the Commanding General of the 1st Provisional Coast Artillery Brigade the facilities of the Panama Pacific General Depot, which under some conditions would not have proven a very serious factor from the standpoint of fire and manpower, but in the Corozal Depot it was a serious factor, because for the past four years the troops

A provisional troop composed of men of various arms and services, mounted on native polo ponies, obtains remarkable results in Department maneuvers.

of the Depot, under command of Colonel George Williams, Cavalry, have not been known as Depot troops but as the First Provisional Depot Regiment, which were "soldiers first and specialists afterwards." And it was these troops that occupied the "center of the line," bore the brunt of the enemy penetration and performed their infantry duties in a manner to call for the commendation of the higher commanders.

One other arm remained at Corozal to be utilized for the desperate defense ordered by the Department Commander. The native polo ponies placed under the command of Colonel Williams for exercise, care and supervision were organized into a provisional troop of cavalry, mounted by men of the various services with riding experience, commanded by the author and, with First Lieutenant John L. Horner, Jr., of the Quartermaster remount service as second in command, were offered to General Gulick to assist him in his defense of the Panama Pacific General Depot, the locks at Miraflores and Pedro Miguel.

The night of March 24th-25th, was a perfect tropical night, especially designed for gay caballeros to whisper sweet nothings into the ears of coy señoritas to the accompaniment of the dulcet strains of strummed guitars, instead of the typical phrases so familiar to the cavalry picket line, overheard in the vicinity of the Corozal stables as ponies were saddled, grain packed, and blank ammunition issued to the command which in appearance closely resembled the aggregation of a Pancho Villa, Sandino, or perhaps even Jesse James.

At five o'clock on the morning of March 25th, the provisional cavalry troop left Corozal charged with the mission of locating and determining the disposition of the enemy force.

The troop moved with its axis generally along the Panama National Highway, and sent an officer's patrol through the Corundu Military Reservation, via trails, to locate the enemy force whose whereabouts were unknown. At about 9:00 A.M. the point of the enemy advance guard was encountered on the National Highway and captured. Very valuable information was obtained and telephoned to brigade headquarters by utilizing commercial telephones.

The continuation of the reconnaissance along the National Highway led to the enemy in bivouac in the vicinity of Matias Hernandez and, by the use of high-handed methods, the exact location of the various regiments was determined and immediately communicated to the brigade commander.

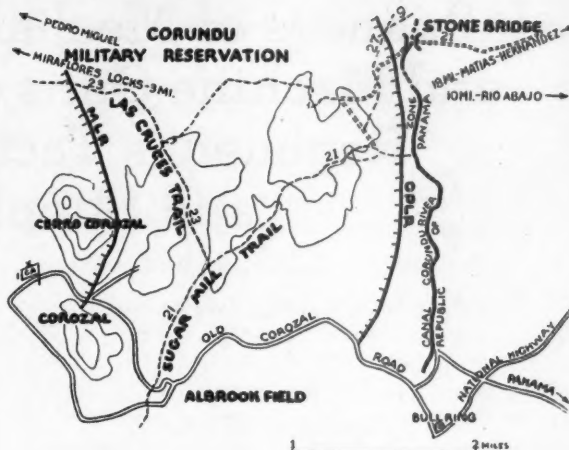
The next mission assigned the "troop" commander was to "cover the outpost line and act according to your own judgment and training as a cavalryman." This is the sort of an order we all love to receive. Being given a mission and allowed to work out the details is really a perfect "set-up" which we too seldom encounter.

Troop headquarters were established at "stone bridge." Cavalry patrols operated in front of the outpost line of the 1st Coast Artillery. The enemy attempted to take the bridge but was driven back across the river. Covered by the fire of the coast artillery outpost, the "troop" charged across the bridge three times and succeeded in capturing the entire section of the enemy which proved to be a covering detachment sent out to reconnoiter the position in the vicinity of the stone bridge.

Before the end of the maneuvers, the cavalry had captured prisoners from each regiment in the line and, through information brought to the Commanding General of the Coast Artillery Brigade had enabled him to determine the exact formation to be utilized by the enemy in the attack.

The night before the attack, sent on a mission to determine the location of the command post of General Brown and the location of the 2d Field Artillery, the embryo Cavalry troop was able to gain the information desired, cut the wires leading to the command post of the enemy commander, and capture and bring back, through the city of Panama, the enemy water purification truck and three additional trucks.

On the morning of March 27th, the missions of the Cavalry were independent and they were permitted to operate where they could do the most harm. The enemy attack was launched at 10:00 A.M., but before and during the attack the cavalry made itself felt. Frequent raids were made on infantry, consisting of riding into them while they were deploying and scattering them or causing them to seek cover; but the high point of the entire operation took place when a mounted patrol, commanded by the troop commander and consisting of one other officer, Lieutenant Horner, and six men, while on an independent mission in rear of the enemy line of departure, encountered the commanding officer of the enemy motor



Where provisional troop participated in Department maneuvers.

convoy and engineer pack train, resting on the bridge over the Corundu River in the vicinity of the Bull ring and about 100 yards from his train, but out of their sight. The commanding officer of the train was immediately captured and forced to surrender his train. Some forty trucks, numerous passenger cars, two trucks equipped with anti-aircraft machine guns and sufficient men to handle them were a part of the spoils of this raid. A discussion with the chief umpire and a brief resume of the circumstances brought forth the welcome information that the capture of the train would be credited to the Coast Artillery Brigade as having been brought in by their mounted patrol.

Since the completion of this maneuver, I have had time to ponder as to why there is no cavalry in Panama. Of all the places imaginable this is the one where the mounted man should serve. Mechanization is splendid, but cannot operate in the jungles and trails, which exist throughout this isthmus, off the highway. If this small provisional group could have operated in a manner which merited the favorable comments of the Department and Sector Commanders, it is conclusive that a well-trained mounted organization would be highly beneficial to assist in the defense of the canal. The wet season in Panama is extremely prolonged but even in the dry season motors can not operate off the main trails or highways, and in wet season no wheeled transportation can negotiate most of the trails. But the horse will always go through. We too few cavalrymen in Panama are pleased and enthused with the success of our mounted activities during these maneuvers and have shown higher authority what mounted troops can accomplish here. In every action entered into by the provisional troop, no advantage was taken of the fact that only blank ammunition was used or that we were operating from horseback. Every tactical movement would have the approval of the faculty of the Cavalry School. It was our intention to prove that the use of the horse cavalry in Panama is desirable and we cannot help but feel that we have done so.

Influences of Mechanization, Motorization and Machine Guns on the Horse Cavalry Regiment's Tactics, Organization and Supply Methods

BY COLONEL C.F. MARTIN, 13th Cavalry
(Concluded from May-June number.)

VI

SCOUT CARS—MOTORIZED COMBAT GROUPS— DEMOLITION SECTION

23. *The Scout Cars.*

The scout cars are a most valuable addition to the regiment's equipment. They permit quick reconnaissance of distant areas, and early contact with the enemy. Thereafter they should keep the regiment informed as to the enemy's movements and permit the most effective orientation of our own march and coordination of action. They should be equipped with the best two-way radios obtainable. The crew should be of specially selected men trained so far as practicable to replace one another in their various functions.

It might be argued, since we have anti-tank weapons as well as light machine guns on our scout cars, that they should be used for security purposes—somewhat like combat patrol groups—on the flanks, front or elsewhere. But the primary and most valuable service of these vehicles is that of reconnaissance at distances much greater than horse cavalry patrols can make in time, and to maintain a flow of information as to the movements of the highly mobile mechanized or motorized hostile elements. Their speed and their high-powered radio sets permit this vital service which can not be performed by mounted patrols or scouts. The scout cars will use their weapons for their own protection; but they should never be employed in combat missions save in cases of grave emergency—they give us new eyes and new ears of far-reaching capacity, the loss of which should not be risked so long as that can be avoided.

Neither should these cars be sent to secure or hold river crossings or other points. The crews are technical men, not organized in any way for dismounted combat—particularly for dismounted movement. If such a car approaches under observation, or stops within range of enemy troops already in possession of bridge or other point, destruction of the car is invited. If it stops out of sight some distance away, its crew is too small and its guns too immobile for any effective attempt at maneuver dismounted.

Another mission that should not be assigned to scout cars is that of demolitions. The same tactical objections exist, and there is no room in the car for explosives. The crew must carry their own equipment and rations; and

Our most effective Cavalry regiment would have one machine gun platoon in each rifle troop, one machine gun troop in each squadron, and one regimental machine gun troop.

are crowded in the car at best. The scout cars should be maintained for command and control purposes. Combat and demolition missions should be left to other agencies

Higher units should have their own scout cars and should not detach those of the regiment when the regiment is separated from the main body, which must often be the case.

24. *A Motorized Regimental Engineer and Demolition Section.*

Since the advent of mechanization and improved motorization, the necessity for engineering and demolition facilities in the regiment has enormously increased. The cavalry regiment as has been pointed out, must often operate far from the division, and, even when with the division, it often has its own zone of activity in which, aside from missions assigned it by higher authority, it will have its own problems of clearing away obstacles, repairing bridges, preparing stream crossings where no bridges exist, destroying or obstructing stream crossings, barricading roads, placing road mines, etc. Light, easily transportable road mines of great value against mechanized units can readily be constructed and should become part of the equipment of the cavalry regiment for use in blocking defiles, important approaches, etc. Often the points at which minor engineering and demolition activities will be necessary will be at a considerable distance and will have to be reached quickly. The present pack demolition section has not the capacity nor the mobility for transporting such equipment; and the need for a small motorized section is clearly indicated for the regiment.

The engineer section, like the scout cars, will frequently need the assistance of a motorized combat group capable of dismounted action.

25. *A Motorized Regimental Combat Group Desirable.*

As has been pointed out mobility can be assured only by force. Often the scout cars will need force to break

through minor resistances to accomplish reconnaissance missions; this force should be provided by some other agency—a combat agency. Armored cars and combat cars can not always be available to assist scout car reconnaissance: their field will usually be greater in scope; the scout cars operating on a smaller radius of action. Horse cavalry groups have not the mobility to keep up with the scout cars. European armies have recognized the need of motorized groups to back up mechanized elements in large reconnaissance groups; and some, notably the French, have provided motorized combat groups in their cavalry—such as the *dragons portés* of the French Cavalry.

It will often be necessary to leave groups of machine gunners and riflemen to guard important road junctions, defiles, etc., or to send them ahead to secure them—at considerable distances in each case.

Such a group will often be necessary to assist the demolition section; it will facilitate the work of both this agency and the scout cars, and will permit prompt release of this section for other work.

Not only can a motorized group perform these missions more quickly than horse groups, but they can rejoin more promptly. Our recent maneuvers have indicated a need for small motorized groups of this kind. The anti-mechanization group previously described (Par. 13) lends itself well to this purpose. One motorized platoon organized as indicated would be of great value. The platoon could be divided into two sections, each an independent, fairly strong combat group for minor activities. Their trucks might well be armored.

VII

ORGANIZATION OF MACHINE-GUN UNITS

26. The tables of organization for our cavalry regiment should provide for the equipment and an organic structure that will enable it to fulfill the rôles which, so far as we can foresee them, will be imposed upon it in the next important war. Theaters of operation vary and some will require modification of equipment; similarly the equipment needed against a certain enemy may not be required against another. It seems logical to prepare for conditions involving an enemy or a group of enemies that will have kept abreast of progress in modern mechanical improvements and inventions and made provisions for an equipment based on such progress. It would thus not be difficult to adjust to special and less complicated situations.

Peace or "Maintenance" tables must be adopted to maintenance conditions, but they should be so prepared as to permit prompt and facile transition to war-strength requirements. What we now have as reduced peace conditions with "recruiting-strength" personnel, requires makeshift compromises; which, however, should so far as possible include provisions for the necessary expansion.

As to machine-gun units, we can meet the situation more or less satisfactorily by:

a. Emulating the infantry, and organizing a machine-gun troop in each squadron;

b. Organizing two regimental machine-gun troops; a plan already proposed for war strength but not for maintenance organization;

c. By a combination of the foregoing, supplemented by sections of anti-tank weapons in rifle troops and the addition of machine guns to headquarters troops.

27. The Light Machine Guns.

In any combination, the light machine guns should be placed as direct-fire support weapons in the rifle troops; and, for reasons previously stated, it is felt that they should be organized as a platoon in the rifle troop.

For war strength, the present gun crews are too small. There should be enough men to provide for proper ammunition supply, for messenger and liaison service, for scouting and combat patrol duty, and initial replacement. There should be two pack animals to each gun.

The terminology should be changed to make it uniform with that employed with reference to the other machine-gun units; that is, each gun and its crew should be called a squad (instead of having a squad composed of two guns, as at present); a section should be composed of two squads (2 guns), and a section leader; two or three sections should constitute a platoon. The squad should be composed of five men.

It should be possible when the platoon attaches a section to a rifle platoon, to send with it at least two men for scouting, combat patrol, and liaison duty.

The dismounted section would then consist of a leader, two scouts and messengers, two gun crews of three men each.

	War-Strength Platoon		One Section		Platoon	
	One Squad	Men	One Section	Men	Platoon	Pack Horses
	Men	Packs	Men	Packs	Men	Pack Horses
Platoon sergeant					1	
File closer sergeant..					1	
Scouts & Messengers (Horse Holders) ..					5	
Section Leader (1 to each Section)			1		3	
Six Squads	5	2	10	4	30	12
	5	2	11	4	40	12
Maintenance or Peace Strength						
	One Squad	Men	One Section	Men	Platoon	Pack Horses
	Men	Packs	Men	Packs	Men	Pack Horses
Platoon sergeant					1	
File closer sergeant..					1	
Scouts, Messengers, etc.					3	
Four Squads (2 Sections)	3	1	6	2	12	4
	3	1	6	2	17	4

This maintenance-strength platoon has been reduced to a possible minimum. It would be better to maintain the full number of packs and guns since regular army units are supposed to be ready to move at once.

28. Minimum Squads for heavy machine guns and other auxiliary weapons.

The minimum war-strength squad for the heavy machine gun, the .50 caliber gun, and the 37-mm. gun

should consist of 7 men and 10 animals, including 1 gun pack and 2 ammunition packs. The initial ammunition supply, which is considered a minimum, would then be for each gun squad: 3,000 rounds for the .30 caliber gun, 840 for the .50 caliber gun, and 128 for the 37-mm.

The section should consist of 15 men, and when detached it should have with it at least 2 additional men for scout and liaison purposes.

29. Squadron Machine-Gun Troops.

WAR-STRENGTH TROOP					
	Men	Packs	Heavy .30 MG	Cal. .50 MG	37-mm.
1 Platoon	36	12	4		
2 Platoons	72	24		8	
1 Section	15	6			2
Troop Head-quarters	24	13(a)			
	147	55	4	8	2

(a) The additional packs are: 2 kitchens; 2 picket line and miscellaneous; 2 ration; 3 ammunition; 4 emergency.

MAINTENANCE-STRENGTH TROOP					
	Men	Packs	Heavy .30 MG	Cal. .50 MG	37-mm.
1 Platoon	29	6	4		
1 Platoon	29	6		4	
1 Section	14	2			2(a)
Troop Head-quarters	19	6			
	91	20	4	4	2

(a) If necessary because of recruiting limitations, 1 37-mm. gun might be made inactive, reducing the strength of each squadron troop to 84.

Advantages of the squadron machine-gun troop plan:

(1) Permits a more adequate supply of essential auxiliary weapons in the regiment.

(2) Eliminates the evils pertaining to the constant necessity of attaching the required weapons from a regimental organization.

(3) Permits a flexible organization of the trains, with squadron sections, assuring the presence of essential ammunition and supplies with the machine-gun elements.

(4) Gives the squadron commander the basic means which he needs to influence his unit's effort in combat, and enables him to acquire essential experience in handling fire-support weapons.

(5) Relieves regimental headquarters of a routine obligation of attaching weapons always needed by subordinate units; saves delay; lessens the difficulty of sending essential ammunition and supplies with the weapons attached to such units.

(6) Facilitates all-round security of freedom of action in encounters with hostile mechanized forces, and the prompt detachment of properly equipped smaller units for special purposes—the necessary auxiliary weapons for a detached troop or platoon being with the squadron from which the detachment should be sent whether or not that squadron is marching in the same column.

Disadvantages:

(1) If a regimental machine-gun troop is maintained in addition to one in each squadron, the overhead is increased by one troop headquarters.

(2) Unless additional weapons are provided under

regimental control, it does not provide enough anti-tank weapons; does not leave the regimental commander any auxiliary fire power of his own to influence the regiment's main effort; and does not provide proper protection for the command post, the led horses, etc., of regimental headquarters and headquarters troop.

30. The Two-Regimental Machine-Gun Troop Organization.

(1) FIRST WAR-STRENGTH TROOP					
	Men	Packs	Heavy .30 MG	Cal. .50 MG	37-mm.
2 Platoons	72	24	8		
1 Platoon	36	12		4	
1 Section	15	6			2
Troop Head-quarters	24	13(a)			
	147	55	8	4	2

(a) Additional packs: same as in squadron machine-gun troops, paragraph 29.

MAINTENANCE STRENGTH					
	Men	Packs	Heavy .30 MG	Cal. .50 MG	37-mm.
1 Platoon	29	6	4		
1 Platoon	29	6		4	
1 Section	14	3			2
Troop Head-quarters	19	10			
	91	25	4	4	2

(2) SECOND WAR-STRENGTH TROOP					
	Men	Packs	Heavy .30 MG	Cal. .50 MG	37-mm.
3 Platoons	108	36		12	
1 Section	15	6			2
Troop Head-quarters	24	13(a above)			
	147	55		12	2

MAINTENANCE STRENGTH					
	Men	Packs	Heavy .30 MG	Cal. .50 MG	37-mm.
2 Platoons	58	12		8	
1 Section	14	3			2(b)
Troop Head-quarters	19	10			
	91	25		8	2

(b) One 37-mm. gun might be made inactive, if necessary; but it should be with the regiment.

Advantages of the two-regimental troop organization:

(1) Leaves the auxiliary means of fire power centralized in the hands of the regimental commander, permitting him to support the main effort of the regiment.

(2) Permits him the possibility of providing for the security of the command post, led horses, etc., of regimental headquarters and headquarters troop.

(3) Centralizes control of trains, making it easier for the supply officer.

Disadvantages:

(1) Retains all the evils of the attachment system discussed in paragraphs 19-21, in that weapons and ammunition supplies normally needed by subordinate units must be attached thereto by regimental headquarters often hastily and under the disadvantageous conditions of campaign, thus losing valuable time, risking confusion and possible failure to get the guns or their ammunition to the unit concerned in time.

(2) Does not provide enough anti-tank weapons.

(3) Limits the squadron commanders in their facilities for acquiring the technical and tactical technique and

training essential to the effective command and coordination in combat of the primary means of action, fire support and movement.

(4) Limits the close relationship between the units of the auxiliary weapons and the rifle units that would come from constant association and training together as parts of the same unit.

31. *The One-Regimental Machine-Gun Troop Organization.*

Our present organization of one regimental machine-gun troop has some of the advantages cited for the two-regimental machine-gun troop organization and all the disadvantages in accentuated form. It does not lend itself well to expansion, which must be considered absolutely necessary for war; and it embodies a weakness in essential weapons, particularly anti-tank weapons; which, in view of the fact that the regular army may have to be sent at once to a theater of operations upon the outbreak of war, might be very unfortunate. The disadvantages of the alternative-weapon plan under which additional weapons are carried in the combat train have already been mentioned (paragraph 21). It would be risking loss of the weapons to have them follow the troops in such a manner, and it would be impossible in action to shift weapons. We need at least a minimum equipment of each kind of weapon that modern warfare will probably make necessary, and need them in the hands of the troops. And we need a peace-time organization including at least the basic essentials of these weapons with an organization that permits the quickest possible expansion to a war footing, as fast as men—not weapons—can be obtained. The weapons and other equipment for the first-line troops should be ready.

At our present reduced strength, the following organization is suggested as the most suitable, on a basis of 106 men in the machine-gun troop:

	Men	Packs	Heavy	.30 MG	Cal. .50 MG	37-mm.
1 Platoon	29	6	4			
3 Sections	46	9			6	
1 Section	13	3				2
Troop Headquarters	18	8				
	106	26	4		6	2

32. *Supplemental Combinations of Auxiliary Weapons.*

The discussion in paragraphs 29-31 indicates that neither the squadron nor the regimental machine-gun troop organization meets all the requirements of the regiment. It is, however, possible to supplement either by placing sections of machine guns and anti-tank weapons within other units.

(1) *Anti-Tank Weapons in Rifle Troops.*

Placing a section of 2 or 3 .50 caliber guns in each rifle troop would add enough of these to the squadron to give it reasonable assurance of freedom of action, especially in a three-trumpet squadron; and with the light machine guns of the rifle troops, provide both direct fire support and

anti-tank weapons and a reasonable capacity for sustained action. This solution might be considered as one which, with a more flexible organization of the trains, would eliminate most if not all of the disadvantages of the two-regimental machine-gun troop plan.

Objections:

That it adds a new technical weapon to the rifle troop, thus overburdening the troop commander who should have his hands full with his rifle platoons and his light machine guns; that it places too many different kinds of weapons in the rifle troop, thus complicating training and adding to the difficulties of supply, particularly of ammunition; that it makes the rifle troop too unwieldy and restricts its mobility.

Answers to these objections:

The rifle-troop commander should not be unduly burdened, since dismounted combat is carried on by platoons as maneuver elements and fire-support element. If the platoons are well organized and well commanded, the troop commander should not have to occupy himself with the details of their operation or of those of the anti-tank weapons; he deals with the commanders of those units and should concern himself mainly with the coordination of their efforts. Besides, when the troop is in the squadron, the squadron commander will probably assign the missions of the anti-tank weapons; and the action of these guns is analogous to that of combat or security groups.

Whenever a troop is separated from its squadron or regiment, it must have anti-tank guns attached to it, and the problem should be less difficult if these were a familiar organic part of the troop. Technical training should be supervised by a regimental machine-gun officer. Supply should be simpler than the present system whereby the guns are often attached without any of their own supply elements. The same light truck could carry ammunition for both the light machine guns and the anti-tank weapons, which will normally be always near together.

The troop would be no more unwieldy or less mobile with the guns as organic equipment than when they are attached, as they must be if hostile mechanization is to be encountered.

The section of anti-tank weapons having no troop overhead would add 15 or at most 23 or 24 men to the troop, depending upon whether 2 or 3 guns were in it. Three would be better than two, since a gun on each flank could watch that flank and part of the front reasonably well, but could not well protect the rear, the led horses, the ammunition truck, etc. If necessary, the light machine-gun platoon could be reduced to two sections—four guns. But in any case, the rifle troop of three rifle platoons, one light machine-gun platoon of six guns, and one section of three anti-tank weapons should run to less than 165 men. That many is a disadvantage, true; but it is a question of balancing disadvantages.

This combination, however, does not eliminate all the

disadvantages inherent in the regimental machine-gun organization. It does not add general support machine guns to the squadron, and headquarters would often have to attach some of the "heavy 30's"; it is rigid and limited in that it does not readily permit increases in the number of auxiliary weapons. No more than three anti-tank weapons could well be absorbed by a troop; and the two regimental machine-gun troops could not be expanded—at least not to more than a total of 16 guns in the troop, which might be possible.

(2) *Adding Machine Guns to Headquarters Troop.*

Placing in the Headquarters Troop a platoon of light machine guns and a platoon of .50 caliber guns would permit the organization of squadron machine-gun troops with sufficient auxiliary weapons to provide for the combat needs of those units, with no regimental machine-gun troop. This would have a disadvantage in leaving no organized troop of fire-power directly in the hands of the regimental commander, except these last-resort weapons of the headquarters troop. He could, however, detach a platoon from one of the squadrons; as he must on the other hand, with the regimental machine-gun troops, attach guns to squadrons.

As previously pointed out, regimental headquarters and the headquarters troop have of necessity been enlarged, and operate all the command, control, and communication activities of the regiment, as well as the supply functions as at present organized. The command post and all the activities and personnel centering about it form a unit of considerable size and importance. In dismounted combat, which will be the normal form, it will doubtless remain in place for more protracted periods than those we have been accustomed to consider probable. While it will probably be initially established in the vicinity of one of the squadrons or the regimental reserve, these combat units can not be tied to it to the point of restricting their action in combat and should not, therefore, be burdened with its protection in position or in its displacement to successive positions. Regimental headquarters should then, it seems, be able to protect its own set-up, its personnel and horses at least for a reasonable time, against hostile raid, envelopments, or attacks of small bodies that have broken through the combat area, as well as against hostile aircraft.

The guns allotted to it would need only a reduced personnel, because the members of the headquarters troop and regimental headquarters could handle the ammunition supply and otherwise assist them in emergency situations. On this basis, it could absorb two sections, four guns, of the light .30 caliber weapons and a similar number of .50 caliber guns; thus:

(a) If mounted:

Light Machine Guns: 4 squads of 1 gun and 3 men each; total in the platoon: 4 guns; 14 men; 4 pack animals.

If transported in trucks: 4 squads of 1 gun and 2 men; total in platoon: 9 men and 4 guns.

(b) .50 caliber guns, if mounted:

Two sections of 2 guns and 14 men each; 3 pack animals; total in platoon: 2 sections; 4 guns; 29 men; 6 pack animals.

If transported in trucks: 2 sections: 4 guns; 16 men; total in platoon: 17 men.

Whatever the organization adopted, the regimental commander in sustained dismounted combat must provide for the security of the command post and its associated personnel and animals.

33. *The Most Advantageous Organization of Machine Guns and Auxiliary Weapons.*

From the foregoing analyses, the most advantageous organizations of the machine guns and auxiliary weapons of the regiment appear to be in the order of their desirability:

(1) A machine-gun troop for each squadron; and one regimental troop, each organized as indicated in Par. 29.

In a regiment of two squadrons of three rifle troops each, this would give each squadron a powerful armament of:

Three platoons of light machine guns as direct-support weapons of the movement elements of the rifle troops; one platoon (4 guns) of heavy .30 caliber machine guns for general support, permitting prompt attachment of a section to a detached rifle troop; two platoons (a total of 8) of anti-tank weapons, which is a minimum for securing freedom of action in open country, and would permit in case of necessity prompt attachment of two of these weapons to a rifle troop or platoon for special missions, in cases when this need could not be promptly met from the regimental machine-gun troop.

The regimental machine-gun troop would provide for regimental needs; permit reinforcing by heavy machine-gun fire the regiment's main effort; permit detachment of as many as two sections of anti-tank weapons to troops or platoons on special missions; provide for the security of the regimental command post and its adjuncts.

The trains could be so organized that each squadron section and the regimental section, modified along the lines indicated in paragraph 22, could promptly meet the needs of the troops.

This organization of three troops does not appear excessive, from the standpoint of personnel, or when compared with the infantry regiment. It takes account of the fact that the necessity for an ample supply of mobile anti-tank weapons properly distributed for effective use seems to be a dominating factor in the matter of equipping and organizing cavalry to participate effectively in future wars.

The maintenance strength arrangement shown permits ready expansion to war strength, and at the same time provides a basic equipment of weapons with which the regiment could move at once and have in its possession a well-balanced minimum of essential weapons.

The set-up permits further expansion or addition of guns by adding a section of anti-tank weapons to each

rifle troop, if so desired, a platoon of light .30 caliber machine guns to the headquarters troop.

(2) Two regimental machine-gun troops organized as shown in paragraph 30; one troop with 1 platoon of heavy 30's (4 guns) and 2 platoons of .50 calibers (8 guns), the other with 2 platoons of the 30's and 1 platoon of the .50 calibers. Each troop to have a section of 37-mm. guns.

In each rifle troop a section of 2 or 3 anti-tank weapons. In the headquarters troop, a platoon of light 30's.

The trains to be reorganized, and made more flexible by the addition of light mobile trucks, as indicated in paragraph 22.

This plan is not so satisfactory as the preceding one.

34. *Summary of Principal Points.*

(1) The special value of cavalry lies in its mobility over varied terrain and its capacity for maneuvering its fire power and effectively employing it in combat. Paragraphs 1-6.

(2) Cavalry must have a high degree of fire power to assure its mobility and make it capable of sustained action to a degree commensurate with its rôles in modern warfare. Paragraphs 5-6.

(3) In dismounted action, its primary means of action are fire and movement; its success in such combat will depend upon the effectiveness with which it coordinates fire and movement. Paragraph 8.

(4) The auxiliary weapons essential to the cavalry regiment are the light machine guns, the heavy machine guns, the 37-mm. guns, and the .50 caliber guns. Each has a distinct and indispensable rôle in cavalry combat. Paragraph 7.

(5) The movement elements in dismounted combat are the rifle platoons. The fire support elements are the light machine guns providing direct fire support for the rifle platoons, and the heavier machine guns providing general fire support and reinforcing the main effort. Paragraph 8.

(6) The light machine guns should be in the rifle troops and organized as fire-support platoons, with sections readily detachable for special action when needed. The heavy general support machine guns should be under the control of squadron and regimental commanders. Paragraphs 8-11, 33.

(7) The advent of mechanization makes it imperative for relatively small bodies of troops acting alone in open country to maintain freedom of maneuver and action by all-round security against combat vehicles. Paragraphs 12-15.

(8) Freedom of maneuver for the regiment and its subordinate units when acting alone or separately in open country can only be assured by an adequate number of anti-tank weapons. Paragraphs 12-15.

(9) Troops, particularly small bodies of cavalry, which must often operate at considerable distances from supporting troops should have as organic elements the weap-

ons and equipment which they will normally require in combat. Paragraphs 17-20.

(10) Dependence upon a higher echelon for the attachment of means normally required in combat is organically wrong; and means loss of time, invites confusion, risks disaster. Paragraphs 17, 19, 20.

(11) Since the cavalry regiment and its smaller units will frequently if not normally operate at considerable distances from supply points and in areas in which their front, flanks, and rear will be vulnerable to attacks by mobile hostile elements, such as mechanization, horse cavalry, or a combination of these, supply by columns from the rear or by higher echelons will be difficult and at least irregular.

These units should therefore have their own trains, and be accompanied by those sections thereof necessary to supply immediate requirements in ammunition and other basic supplies. Paragraphs 17, 21.

(12) Cavalry units can protect their own trains as readily as they can protect their far more numerous horses during dismounted combat; and if the vehicles are properly armed with machine guns and anti-tank weapons, they should be an asset and not a liability—particularly in the protection of the led horses. Paragraphs 5, 6, 21.

(13) The trains of the regiment should be of such type and so organized as to assure the flexibility necessary to meet the immediate supply needs of all units of the regiment which may have to operate at a distance from the main body. This means that a squadron, troop, or platoon detached for a special mission should be accompanied by an element of the train; this is particularly true of machine-gun elements which must accompany units of which they are not an organic part. Paragraph 21.

(14) The rapidity with which cavalry action occurs and develops has been accelerated by the advent of mechanization. Therefore the organization of machine guns and anti-tank weapons in the regiment should provide for an adequate number of each so distributed that the units normally requiring them in combat will have them as an integral part of their equipment or immediately available to them. Paragraphs 12-19.

(15) The most effective organization of the regiment would be one with two squadrons of three troops of three rifle platoons and one light machine-gun platoon; with one machine-gun troop in each squadron and one regimental machine-gun troop. Trains to be organized to correspond. A less satisfactory organization of the machine-gun troops would be two regimental troops, with supplementary sections of anti-tank weapons in the rifle troops and a light machine-gun platoon in the headquarters troop. In this case—to permit the regiment to maintain training and to be prepared to move at once with a minimum of essential means of combat and to facilitate prompt expansion to war strength—the two regimental troops should be kept active at maintenance strength, with all types of auxiliary weapons present. Paragraphs 26-33.

(16) Particularly in the machine-gun troops, light mobile trucks would normally be more useful than the trailer loaded with supplies belonging to the whole unit and drawn by a truck similarly loaded. The additional machine guns of various types included in or contemplated for the regiment, and the advent of mechanization making essential a larger initial supply of ammunition, rations and grain (Pars. 17-21), render it imperative to increase the tonnage and the flexibility of the combat trains.

At least one additional light ($\frac{3}{4}$ -ton) truck in each rifle troop and two such trucks in each machine-gun troop are indicated.

(17) Regimental scout cars should be used for reconnaissance and communication purposes. All their space and their technically trained crews are required for these functions. Save in great emergency they should not be given demolition missions or security or other combat missions, particularly those involving dismounted action in combat.

(18) The regiment needs a motorized demolition section.

(19) There is an indicated need in the regiment for a small motorized combat platoon composed of light machine guns, anti-tank weapons, and riflemen.

(20) Mechanization and motorization demand that horse cavalry think in new terms in regard to its tactical formations, the methods of assuring its own freedom of movement and action and its methods of combat.

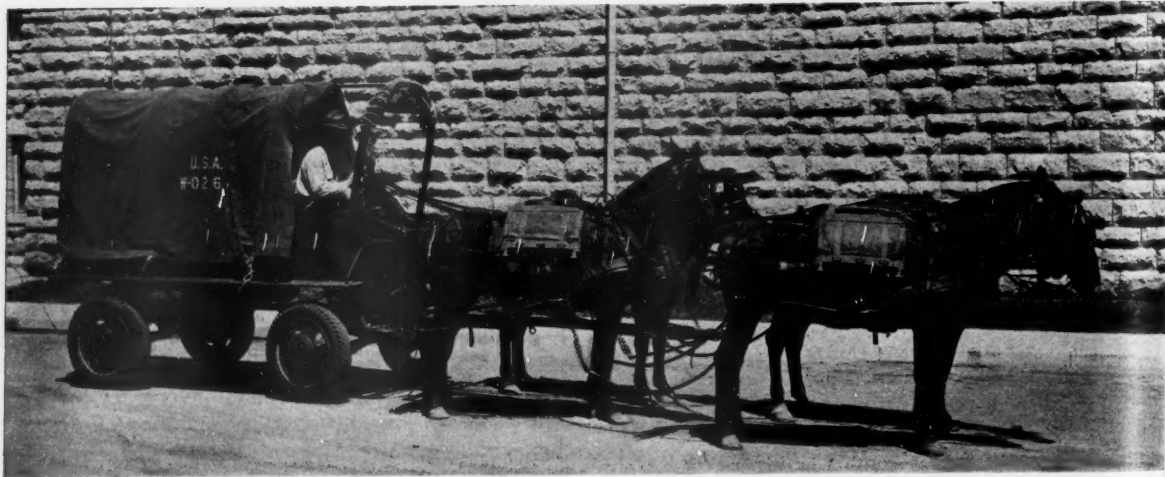
35. In this discussion the attempt has been made to present a composite pattern of cavalry's rôles in future wars, in which mechanization and effective modern motor transport may be expected to play a prominent part. The views presented are centered around three principal ideas: an efficient organization for control and coordination working downward and outward from the central command as well as upward and inward from the troops; possession by the combat units as an integral part of their organization the weapons and means of supply and communication they will require in combat and movement related thereto; flexibility in the organization of these means of combat and supply to assure smooth and prompt coordination of the two agencies which are as closely interrelated and interdependent as fire support and movement are on the battle field.

From the point of view taken, cavalry's needs in the way of artillery, armored cars, and other special agencies have not been considered, the discussion having been restricted to that of the regiment's auxiliary weapons, means of transport, etc.

(The End)

1 1 1

Experimental Harness for New Trailers (Convertible Type)



Proposed Method of Moving New Trailer.

A PROPOSED method of moving the new cavalry trailer (convertible type), by horsepower is receiving a test in the 13th Cavalry. Under the direction of the regimental commander, Colonel Charles F. Martin, experimental work with this new vehicle has been continuous since the reception of seven of these trailers in June.

The harness is a combination of the Phillips pack saddle

and breeching, the Field Artillery breast collar and traces and the Quartermaster ambulance harness, bridles and reins. Due to the spring floods in Kansas, this "rig" has not been given the "acid test" under field conditions to date. It is hoped that several important tests will be possible during the fall maneuvers of the Cavalry School.

*Mod.
lin. Ar
Cavalry

MODERN CAVALRY: A Discussion of Employment, Troop Leading, Organization, and Training*

By G. BRANDT

Generalleutnant, German Army, Retired; formerly Inspector-General of Cavalry.

Translated from the German by F. W. MERTEN.

(Concluded from May-June number)

VII. TRAINING

THE historical experiences of all nations and ages have furnished undisputable proof that outstanding cavalry leaders are the exception; it is for this reason that, whenever such a man did present himself, he invariably ushered in a new era in the history of the mounted arm. This is attributable to the high demands which of necessity are made upon the character and talents of a true cavalry commander. His early endowments must fit him for the position; yet they alone do not suffice. This gift of nature must be supplemented by a thorough knowledge of all military requirements and, in particular, of the technical needs of cavalry. These qualifications are acquired by judicious training founded on practical experience and theoretical study, combined with, and enhanced by, serious and conscientious reflection. Although innate talents tend to aid this training immensely, yet it will, in the main, resolve itself into diligently and systematically pursuing sound and well-founded principles. It is necessary, however, completely to absorb the knowledge thus gained by individual thought and analysis, so that it may be quickly applied at any time without lengthy deliberation. Knowledge, finally, must be supplemented by skill, that is, by a thorough familiarity with the tactics and technique of cavalry.

Anyone who is entrusted with the training and instruction of cavalry, must himself possess a background of sound training. This process requires a system, a carefully arranged plan. General v. Schmidt, famous for possessing a prominent practical mind with respect to his arm, in his precepts governing the instruction and training of cavalry remarks as follows: "I sometimes prefer schematism or mere routine to an arbitrary procedure as represented by empiricism, which spoils everything." Originality and method must go hand in hand; but if applied unwisely and one-sidedly, they will cause the troops to suffer spiritual ruin either from utter exhaustion or from lack of activity.

Every system of training presupposes, of necessity, a thorough training of the instructors. Much work that is unnecessary, futile, and killing morale, could be avoided,

Every system of training presupposes, of necessity, a thorough training of instructors.

if everybody would fully appreciate this principle underlying all successful training systems. There is nothing more destructive than to teach the pupil in the beginning something that is wrong. To remedy the mistake afterwards is very difficult, and hardly will it ever be accomplished satisfactorily.

A squadron commander who does not know how to select and train competent instructors in his unit will soon witness a collapse of the training of his command. He will either have to try to attend to everything himself, or he must commit his men and horses to instructors that are untrained and incompetent. The result in either case is bound to be disastrous. Even in a squadron the training schedule is so extensive and diversified that the squadron commander alone cannot impart the instruction, but requires the services of keen and well-trained assistants. To create such a body of men is the squadron commander's foremost training mission. Yet, in spite of the attention that has been directed to this principal requirement, its full significance has not yet been learned by all concerned.

General v. Bernhardt, in his book entitled *Germany and the Next War*, has this to say: "The higher a type the instructor represents, and the greater knowledge he possesses of all his duties, the greater will be his influence upon the pupils, the quicker will he succeed in making himself understood by his subordinates, and the more will he acquire their confidence and respect which constitute the most solid foundation of discipline."

Also General v. Schmidt's precepts regarding the training of instructors, as well as the systematic sequence of training subjects, deserve to be dwelled upon once more: "A judicious and suitable selection and training of good instructors, as well as a permanent staff of assistant instructors are paramount. Moreover, adherence to strictly systematic methods during instruction periods and logical

**Moderne Kavallerie*, published by E. S. Mittler & Sohn, Berlin. American translation rights owned by the United States Cavalry Association.

The training of a soldier to become a horseman and a rifleman must be founded upon individual instruction.

sequence of training subjects must begin at the very bottom. It is important to lay a good foundation, which constitutes the primary prerequisite, by beginning with the simplest subjects. The instructors, however, must not only know the ways and means of laying this foundation, but must furthermore be absolutely familiar with the entire content of the subject, its causes as well as its effects; for only thus will these men be able properly to conduct the instruction periods and exercise their influence in conformity with the system. Only if the instructor fully comprehends the purpose of the individual drill movements and lessons, will he teach his men in logical sequence, add necessary exercises and lessons to assist them, and tend to produce a superior degree of training. The least the men are entitled to demand of their instructors implies that the latter are fully conversant with their subjects and have prepared themselves for their lessons. In other words, it presupposes that they know what subjects to take up with their pupils; what should follow the preceding lesson; what the pupils need most to further their progress; and how to go about teaching the subject matter. Only the instructor who is always prepared will be able to render real service; and only he who renders real service and realizes this will become interested in his work and not merely indulge in drudgery. Finally, only he who has acquired such interest in his work can render superior service."

Nothing better could be advanced about the importance of well-trained instructors than the words spoken by General v. Bernhardt and General v. Schmidt. Consequently, we found it advantageous to cite their observations on this subject verbatim. If we take these words to heart and act accordingly, we shall possess the philosopher's stone, the very elixir of training. The reason for discussing the training of instructors in such great detail hinges on the fact that it actually constitutes the secret of success in any kind of training.

While the training of the staff of instructors means much hard work for the squadron commander, it is nevertheless a thankful task. This training must never cease but must continually be improved by labor and study. On the other hand, it is the best means of carrying out the training mission within the squadron along uniform lines; besides, it affords the squadron commander the assurance that the training of the various sections is conducted according to his orders and instructions. Moreover, the squadron commander thus secures for himself eager collaborators, men who are proud of the independence given them within the sphere of their respective activities, and who on their part will continue to improve themselves as instructors and leaders and thus gain in value and efficiency as time goes on.

Having divided the lessons and exercises into short training periods, the squadron commander must discuss

the program with the instructors and afford them an opportunity to prepare themselves for the subjects in question. The training of the squadron as such should not begin until the squadron commander is convinced that the instructors are thoroughly conversant with the program. The squadron commander, on his part, will supervise the instructors and intervene wherever necessary. Thus he will obtain a much better perspective than if he were personally to carry out the training schedule.

It must be admitted that it may be rather difficult for an active and industrious commanding officer to pursue this method. On the other hand, if he appreciates its soundness and strictly adheres to it, he will—though not immediately, for omissions cannot be remedied at once—eventually meet with success. It is a grave mistake to believe that matters will go wrong unless one personally attends to everything. Such a belief either testifies to a weak character or to a lack of intelligence; then again it may have its origin in stupid conceit. A matter which is arranged according to what only one pair of eyes can see will always prove unstable.

In contrast to the dull methods employed in training large masses in a brief period of time, the training of a soldier to become a horseman and also a rifleman must be founded upon individual instruction. Only the latter can produce satisfactory results; for it is the aim of our work not merely to produce soldiers and cavalymen, but also to build and strengthen the character of the individual. Here again we may follow the writings of General v. Schmidt who demands that individual training should constitute our foremost ambition. If the work is carried out in this sense and spirit everywhere, it cannot fail to exercise its beneficial influence upon the morale of our men: "Just as the results of physical training will be reflected in the appearance of the cavalry soldier, in his manner of walking and conduct in public, so will his alert mind and speech, his make-up, the expression of his face and eyes testify that he has been subjected to the proper mental influence in every respect. With such men one can accomplish things; they will understand their superiors and grasp the latter's conceptions and ideas; they will not hesitate to attack any problem; nothing will ever be too much for them; they will be full of daring and determination. Such men will be imbued with an unlimited amount of good intention; and it is to cultivate the latter which really constitutes the main object."

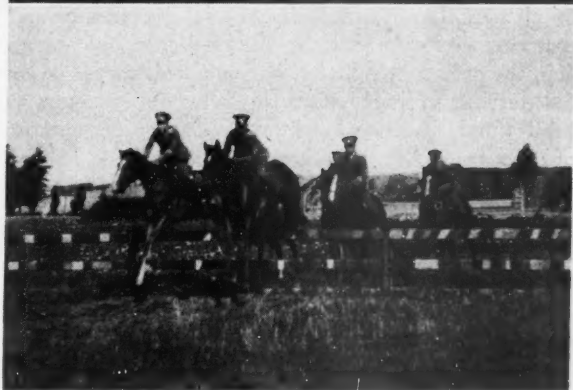
One must continually have recourse to individual training and employ it throughout the year. In so doing, one must see to it that every detail is executed exactly as prescribed in the training regulations. "*Soignez les détails, ils ne sont pas sans gloire; c'est le premier pas, qui mène à la victoire.*" ("Be mindful of the details, for they are not without glory; it is the first step which leads toward victory.") May we always take these words to heart. May nothing ever seem too insignificant to deserve consideration. He to whom the small is too small, will never obtain the great.

While the dismounted trooper is trained according to the training regulations of the infantry, the mounted training is carried on in conformity with the manual on horsemanship. It would be a welcome revision of the cavalry training regulations if a chapter were added which, as has been done in a similar manner in the infantry training regulations with regard to individual training in marksmanship, would deal with the individual training of the mounted trooper in the field and furnish him advice on how to act under the various conditions while mounted.

The manual on horsemanship gives all the details necessary for the individual mounted training of the trooper. Since equitation, however, also involves the training of the horse as soon as the rider has mastered the rudiments of horsemanship, the riding instructors are only too prone to devote greater attention to the training of the horse than to that of the individual trooper. Even if the rider does remain within the sphere of freedom the manual on horsemanship deliberately grants, it must nevertheless be demanded that all movements of the mounted trooper be executed strictly in conformity with regulations. Any arbitrary action on the part of the rider with regard to his seat and application of aids is no more permissible than it is in dismounted training. Unfortunately, it often happens that especially the good riding instructors, men who excel in the training of their horses, fail to have an eye for the individual training of the mounted trooper. This shortcoming is due to the fact that these instructors see only the horse and that they are satisfied so long as the animal is well presented by the rider. Whether the man riding the horse is offending in all other respects against the manual, this type of instructors, however, inclines to overlook, failing to consider that it is their duty to train not only horses but teach horsemanship to soldiers as well. Inasmuch as formal close-order drill has been greatly reduced since the war, individual instruction in horsemanship on strict lines has gained all the more in importance as a means for instilling discipline.

Is the training of the horse, as carried on by us, still in conformity with the times; and does not the manual on horsemanship make too great demands? These questions are asked sometimes, particularly by officers of the other arms. Moreover, comment is often made to the effect that the cavalry could use the time spent in horse training to far better advantage in some other branch of training. It is contended that formerly, when the cavalry regiments upon mobilization needed to muster in only a small number of additional mounts, there might have existed good reasons for emphasizing the training of the horses; yet the squadron in a future war would have an entirely different appearance and, moreover, only part of its horses would have the benefit of peace-time training. Why, then, all this work and effort spent on the training of horses?

The following may serve as an answer. While the training of the horse requires time, it does not take up



GERMAN REMOUNT TRAINING.

UPPER: Riding a remount next to a led horse.

CENTER: Training of young remounts in crossing water.

LOWER: Schooling young horses in going over hurdles.

much more time than is necessary for the purpose of affording the animals the daily exercise essential for maintaining their health and fitness for duty. On the other hand, it cannot be gainsaid that a trained horse will be in better condition, thereby saving the state money; furthermore, that he is more suitable for cavalry service than the untrained horse; and, finally, that his performance will be superior and that he promises to carry his rider to the battlefield in better condition than an untrained animal would. While campaigning demands of the trooper that he possess complete control over his mount, it requires of the horse obedience, strength and agility of

body, and endurance. To fulfill these demands by systematically training both man and mount is the purpose of training in horsemanship. Ought one, then, to reject the advantages with the disadvantages and entirely forego the benefits of careful training, simply because part of the horses of a war-strength squadron lack this peace-time process? The German principles of training, as laid down in the manual on horsemanship, have stood the test and can easily be acquired by following the progressive steps of the manual. If this training were abandoned, it would have to be replaced by something else. It is folly to imagine that those nations which do not follow our system of training have no method of horse training whatever; no cavalry can exist without some sort of training system. No matter what country, its cavalry regiments have to devote some of their time to horse training. Hence we would hardly effect any saving in time, were we to replace our system of training with some other method.

While training the horses, we simultaneously pursue another aim, the importance of which should not be underrated: namely, that of developing riding instructors. Inasmuch as the instructor ought to be more proficient than the pupil, we must deliberately raise the peace requirements to a higher level than the actual needs of war render it necessary. Who else should train the young riders and remounts, if we had no riding instructors? Our minds are still fresh with the memory of the toil and labor that were necessary after the World War in order to regain the pre-war standard of our mounted troops. Why did this cost so much effort; and why did it require so much time? Because we did not have a sufficient number of experienced riding instructors at our disposal. In war, proper horse training as such will be neglected, for other demands will naturally be more pressing. Let us watch, therefore, that every trooper in his capacity as horseman derives sufficient benefit from his peace-time training to place him in a position where he, on his part, may see to it that the training and treatment of the animals in time of war does not sink below the minimum standard capable of being endured.

Nor is there any reason to believe that a less well-trained horse would answer the purpose of modern cavalry. In former days, it was very well, within the close formation of the squadron, to take care of less well-trained horses; the latter would simply run along with the rest of the squadron. Modern tactics, however, require the horse to traverse all sorts of terrain and negotiate various kinds of obstacles individually; these circumstances, naturally, make far greater demands upon the expertness of the rider, as well as upon the tractability and dexterity of the horse.

Yet horse training is not an end in itself. The trained horse merely represents the means which enables us to develop a good rider with sympathy for his mount. This aim cannot be attained, however, on badly-trained animals which will only tend to produce crude riders devoid

of the capacity to understand the horse. The bending exercises, therefore, retain their full importance. They not only serve to insure a thorough gymnastic training of the horse, but they also give to the rider that fine sensation of touch so highly essential for a correct application of the aids.

Frederick the Great appreciated the importance of horse training as the foundation of a good cavalry. One of his contemporaries tells us that, after the Peace of Dresden, Frederick devoted particular attention to equitation of his cavalry. Every regiment was ordered to construct a riding hall. The soldiers were then instructed in all the details of the art of horsemanship. It was in this manner that every individual cavalryman gained absolute confidence in his own strength and qualifications both as to horsemastership and the use of his weapon. No soldier of the regiment was considered fit for field service unless he had been thoroughly taught all the details of equitation and had acquired a firm seat. "It was the hard work in the riding hall applied to the training of both horse and rider, which constituted the secret that enabled the Prussian cavalry to maneuver in large bodies with such remarkable speed." After the engagement of Bratsch which took place on May 22, 1745, the Great King expressed himself as follows: "In 1741, the Prussian cavalry represented the most cumbersome, awkward and spiritless body of mounted troops in Europe. Ever since it has been drilled, it has acquired dexterity, courage, and self-confidence; now it has grown bold. Reward and punishment, praise and censure, each used at the proper time, will change a man's disposition and imbue him with a spirit such as one would not have expected in the raw recruit. If, moreover, great examples of courage that will tend to arouse their admiration are put before them, the men will vie with each other in giving the best that is in them. Often these characteristics lie merely dormant. Yet severe shocks will awaken them; whereupon they will assert themselves and develop to great strength." Such were the fruits of a thorough training of both man and mount, a result to the maturing of which the horse training contributed no small part.

The smaller an army is, the more difficult it will be to maintain a high standard of horse training. It will require a number of specialists to be assigned to the Cavalry School as instructors in equitation. Since the training of these officers must of necessity be one-sided, they will occupy a disadvantageous position with respect to promotion to higher grade, as compared with their fellow officers. It is for this reason that one will hardly ever find anyone inclined to enter upon the schooling of horses as a life career. One would, however, fail to appreciate the difficulties inherent in this line of work, if one were to assume that an officer could become a master horseman and riding instructor in addition to his other duties. If the cavalry is to retain its old standard, it must procure the services of an adequate number of equitation specialists and make provision to insure proper promotion for

them. Not only the cavalry, but the entire army as well, will benefit from the labor of these officers.

We cannot conclude the discussion regarding the importance which horse training has for the cavalry, without adding a few words about mounted sports and the *haute école*, or high-school riding, as engaged in by the stables of the Cavalry School in Hanover.

The school stables in Hanover fulfill that mission which is of such vital importance for the entire cavalry: namely, to furnish an object lesson on mounts specially selected as to suitability, up to what degree the schooling of a horse may be raised by employing the German system of cavalry equitation. The Cavalry School is the place where our method is constantly tested and further developed. For, also in the case of equitation, not to progress means to go backward. Furthermore, the Cavalry School serves to promote the advanced training of especially talented riding instructors and, by continually changing them, benefits the entire arm. By its example, the School furnishes valuable suggestions and thus is instrumental in advancing the standard of horsemanship in the regiments.

What the school stables are to the general training of the horses, the jumping and versatility stables are to the school of jumping. In the latter, training and style are tested and improved to a degree that enables both rider and horse to measure up to the greatest possible performances in jumping. Thus the training in jumping of all branches of the service benefits from the work of these stables. Whereas outstanding performances in jumping can be expected only from particularly fit jumpers under especially gifted horsemen, the cavalry must give its primary attention to the training of horses with a view to developing facility in various subjects. To this end, both rider and horse must learn to perform so as to serve as an example to the regimental school of equitation; such proficiency, though to a lesser degree, should be demanded of any cavalry trooper and cavalry mount. It is in this sense that training, jumping and steeple-chasing are mentioned in the manual on horsemanship as the training object for both man and mount in the regiment. The cavalry, therefore, should take a keen interest in such sports. They will produce the type of rider and horse that the cavalry will require in the field.

Racing produces courageous and daring horsemen, men who will act with calmness and alacrity of spirit. It is the best school in which to prepare the equestrian for war. The gentlemen-jockeys that were killed during the World War were rated as outstanding among the officers of their respective arms. Yet, on account of the low weight requirements, only a relatively small number of officers will ever be able to participate in races. It would be a great blow to the cavalry arm, if this small number should continue to decrease. Participation in races, therefore, should be encouraged by all authorities.

The various cavalry regiments receive their remounts as early as June. This time of the year as such is not favorable. Yet the date of assigning these remounts cannot

Only those formations and movements which will be required in actual warfare should be taught.

be postponed; for, this would necessitate an enlargement of the remount depots, in view of the fact that the purchase of young animals must begin in the spring of the year and space must be provided for them in the depot.

Because of the necessity of engaging in major tactical exercises and owing to the leave period, the regiments often find it difficult during the summer to concern themselves sufficiently with the new remounts. But if these remounts are to remain as strong and well-nourished as they arrive from the depots, their work under the saddle must begin immediately. It is a mistake to postpone this work until the fall of the year and merely lead the remounts up to that time.

Should there be a shortage of riders and suitable riding instructors during the summer, it is advisable to train the remounts on the longe. This requires only a few men. Moreover, the young animals will learn to stretch their necks and are not spoiled when in the fall of the year the work under the rider is taken up.

Once the trooper has mastered the fundamental principles of individual training, his training in squad formation must be especially stressed. The squad constitutes the smallest tactical unit; thoroughly trained in mounted as well as dismounted action, it is an indication of the excellency of its squadron. Within the squad, the soldier learns everything he needs in war. Whatever exceeds the sphere of the squad is more or less a matter that concerns the squadron commander.

Instruction must be imparted in as simple a form as possible; only that which is required in actual warfare should be taught. Squad formations must be simple; whereas difficult and elaborate movements ought to be avoided, remembering always that only what is free from intricacy will stand the test in war. Mounted formations should adapt themselves to dismounted work; for the men will learn to carry on the latter with greater facility if this relationship exists.

A review of the problem confronting the squad under actual war conditions will show that they are not so complex as they appear at first sight. The individual trooper may be employed either as a mounted messenger, or as a sentry on outpost duty, or as a rifleman. On the whole, this covers the duties incumbent upon the cavalry soldier as an individual. In the execution of any other activity, however, he acts in unison with his squad and under the control of a leader.

Mounted, the single squad may operate independently as a patrol, as a point, or as a unit within the squadron when deployed; while dismounted, it may be used as a cossack post on outpost duty. In combat, however, the squad rarely fights independently, but usually functions as a member of its respective platoon. Thus we observe that the individual squad is likewise restricted as to independent action.

Whether operating as a point, or as a patrol, or again as the advance squad of a deployed squadron, there are very few differences in the maneuvering of the mounted squad. The same principles govern any of these three types of riding. Bearing this in mind, one will encounter little difficulty in training the squad in the application of these tactics.

The squad leader, accompanied by a few men, rides ahead of his squad, while the remainder under a second-in-command follows him. From time to time the squad leader issues orders to the men accompanying him with regard to reconnoitering certain tactical localities. Should the squad draw fire, it must determine whether the enemy is occupying merely an isolated tactical locality or an extended line of resistance. This comprises practically all the contingencies that a mounted squad will be called upon to face. Terrain, as well as enemy measures, will vary in every case and influence the action of the squad accordingly. Fundamentally, however, the tactics remain always the same: namely, either a frontal or enveloping attack, with or without fire support; or a retreat; or defensive action. It is up to the squad leader to decide which of these contingencies apply. Although these potential cases will repeat themselves under varied conditions, they will nevertheless be always more or less alike. It is in the solution of such problems, therefore, that the squad must be trained.

Yet this is not quite so simple a matter as one might be inclined to assume from what has been stated above. Whereas in theory it is comparatively easy for the squad leader to arrive at a decision, yet to translate this decision into action is not quite so simple a matter, but requires a good deal of training.

As soon as the squad has been thoroughly trained in the basic squad movements, varied ground must replace the barrack square. This, however, requires a change in the system that was adhered to in the days prior to the World War.

Before the war, the yearly contingent of recruits entered the service in the month of October, so that practically all training during the winter season took place in garrison.

This condition no longer prevails, however, inasmuch as the squadrons of the regular army receive no recruits at the present time.* The harvest in the fields terminates in August; while planting begins at the end of March. During the period beginning in April and ending in mid-August cultivated ground is not available for tactical exercises because of the damage to the crops they would entail. Hence there are left only the months from October to March in which to take advantage of the open country for squad training.

Nor can a squad carry out its training schedule in the short period of a few weeks; on the contrary, its training must extend over a long period of time. As in the case of individual training, recourse must continually be had to

squad training, particularly after periods during which most of the training was taken up by exercises of the higher units. Able squad leaders and men that will know how to maneuver skillfully can be produced only by frequent exercises in the field. Garrison drill grounds are too small for this purpose and offer too little variety. On the other hand, the large training camps which in themselves would be suitable for squad training are needed for the instruction of large units and leave no time for squad training; hence it must be concluded beforehand.

The demand has been made to leave the riding hall occasionally during the winter season and to take the field for training twice a week; unfortunately, this demand has not met with universal approval. True, the squadron commander who is solely working for a successful mounted inspection in the spring and who believes that the salvation of his command depends upon the outcome of the inspection of bits, must indeed entertain apprehension for his training, if his squadron were ordered to take the field during the winter. For he is the type who considers his mission to consist exclusively of schooling horses in the winter and training men in the summer. One may be justified in assuming, however, that notions of this sort have disappeared; for they certainly would not meet the requirements of modern cavalry. Likewise, one will hardly find a superior officer today who judges his squadron commanders solely by the results of a mounted inspection.

Yet this in no way should detract from the accepted merits of a good school of equitation and a thorough training of the horse. Any attempt at interpreting these lines in that manner would constitute an utter failure to comprehend their true meaning.

If throughout the winter the horses are worked in the riding hall six times a week, the results of their training by the arrival of spring are bound to be greater than if the horses enter the riding hall only four times weekly. On the other hand, so many other subjects will have been covered by the outdoor exercises during the winter season as to make available a certain amount of time in the summer which may be devoted to equitation during the summer months. Besides insuring greater serviceability of the mounts and better riding discipline of the men throughout the year, this procedure will, moreover, render it unnecessary to start instruction in equitation all over again in the fall of the year. Comparing horse training with gymnastics, one will readily appreciate the necessity of devoting constant, rather than periodic, attention to this subject. Crammed into a limited period, this training might easily be overdone and thus miss its purpose.

Even General v. Schmidt, in his instructions, warns against any abrupt break in passing from the winter to the summer schedule. He makes it a point to demand that the winter training should be continued throughout the summer. Critics voicing doubt he exhorts as follows:

*The German regular army (Reichswehr) enlists its men for a period of 12 years. Tr.

"This is no illusion, but a matter which can be accomplished without difficulty if handled properly. Provided this is done, it will not be necessary every fall to start with the first lessons in equitation; on the contrary, it will be possible to proceed from the stage reached during the summer and thus obtain still greater results in the winter. Steady progress will consequently manifest itself in the riding ability of the men as well as in the suppleness of the mounts." General v. Schmidt was no red-tape theorist, but a practical man of a type rarely met with in the cavalry arm. If he believed in the feasibility of his demands as early as 1873, when conditions were far more difficult than they are today, then the cavalry of these modern days should find it all the easier to meet them.

General v. Schmidt's advice regarding the manner in which to conduct the school of equitation also merits mentioning; for it corroborates what General v. Poseck, the first Inspector-General of the German cavalry after the World War, used to stress on all occasions, namely: "As a matter of principle, individual riding must be included in every period of equitation; for only this will tend to compensate for the disadvantages arising from riding in ranks. Whereas the latter will produce dull and unintelligent riders, individual riding will stimulate and awaken the men and make them more resourceful and expert. Moreover, faults can be observed far more readily when the trooper is riding singly, thus giving the instructor an opportunity to render better service and thoroughly instruct each individual rider. Especially when riding remounts in ranks, there is no way of assuring that the horse will move straight before his haunches, which after all is of vital importance. This can and will be attained only by individual riding in and out of ranks. Hence strict adherence to this method cannot be emphasized too strongly."

Originating in the desire to gain time for other duties, it is still customary in some regiments to let the horses remain in stables on certain days. The horse, however, is no machine which can simply be stopped when not in use. He is a live animal of flesh and blood; and it borders on cruelty to leave him tied in his stall for 48 hours at a time. A judicious arrangement of the daily routine will very well permit of daily exercising the horses. Even on the days that are set aside for the inspection of mounts, horse exercise may be taken, if the daily schedule has been judiciously prepared. Frederick the Great went still further by ordering the horses to be exercised on Sundays after church service; "for His Majesty regards it as the best conservation of the horses, if they are ridden daily, thus keeping them in wind and preventing them from becoming stiff-legged, not to mention putting on excessive weight." In the interest of the health of the animals, one should never allow them to remain in stables for two days a week, to which the Sunday must be added as a third day of rest.

Mounted field training of the squad during the winter must go hand in hand with dismounted combat training

outside of the drill ground. Both mounted and dismounted training of the squad should be concluded by the end of March.

Instruction in the basic principles of outpost duty is given best by constructing a model post for each of the various classes of outposts somewhere in the vicinity of the barracks. To begin with, every man must be required to pass through the routine of mounting the various posts on foot. It is with the aid of these models, combined with proper instruction, that he must learn the principles of outpost duty. Having once acquired this routine, mounted training in outpost duty is next shifted to a distant and unfamiliar terrain. Final training in these duties takes place during the summer months; it is important that the various outposts should be maintained at least for a night and a day rather than a mere few hours. Only in this manner will actual conditions be simulated and proper training be had with respect to the rationing of man and mount, dividing the men into reliefs within each outpost, and maintaining constant vigilance. It is not necessary, however, to use the entire squadron in every case; on the contrary, it is sufficient to call out one squad or one platoon at a time. First consideration is that, as nearly as possible, war-time conditions are created with regard to the rationing of the participants and the selection of the terrain.

In the German Field Service Regulations no mention whatever is made of the outposts of independent cavalry. Care should be taken of this omission whenever a revision of the regulations is made.

The training of the squad is followed by that of the platoon. If the platoon commander during the winter judiciously directs and supervises the field training of his squads, the latter will on their own account solve many a problem dealing with the activities of the squad as part of the platoon. Aside from this, it will be of great advantage if the platoon training can in part take place in the field, in view of the fact that most garrison drill grounds are too small for the combat exercises of a mounted platoon and fail to offer a sufficient variety of situations.

All formal drill is confined to, and terminates with, the training of the squad. Formal movements on the part of the platoon in the zone of action, on the other hand, do not exist. The platoon takes advantage of the terrain; hence its adherence to any kind of rigid formation in the field is wrong. Training camp experiences violating this rule ought not to mislead one in this respect. The training camp will not bear comparison with the field.

Since the peace-time squadron* is too weak as to allow for the organization of three complete platoons, one entire platoon or several squads in the platoons must be represented by flags.

Although a skeletonized squadron of this type will serve the purpose of teaching the duties incident to messenger service and any movement up to the moment

*Similar to troop of U. S. Army.

when the men are required to dismount for action, yet combat training itself cannot be imparted with this torso. For training in dismounted action, it is more instructive and better results are obtained for all participants, if the exercises are carried out by war-strength platoons, reinforced by heavy weapons if possible, while adjoining elements are merely represented.

If garrison training has been conducted by platoons and skeleton squadrons, in field training it is advisable from the start to combine two squadrons into one war-strength squadron for all exercises. The regiment thus will comprise only two full squadrons, so that the two missing ones must needs be represented by one flag each, thus merely indicating their respective command posts. This, of course, is only an expedient imposed by the limitation of the numerical strength of the units. Yet a resourceful regimental commander will never be in want of instructive problems for his command, though only one-half of it consists of full squadrons, while the other half is represented by flags. If the two captains take their turn in commanding the composite squadron, the regimental commander, besides saving several platoon commanders, will have some senior officers who may serve as umpires or as commanders of the opposing forces.

If two cavalry regiments are occupying the field training area at the same time, the two units should frequently maneuver as a war-strength regiment or engage in brigade exercises. There exists so little opportunity for the training of cavalry in large units that every possible chance for combined exercises of two or even more regiments ought to be exploited to the fullest extent. To let both regiments maneuver as opposing forces, on the other hand, will prove of less benefit than training them together as a composite war-strength unit.

If the winter months have been devoted to squad training, the garrison training thereafter must be systematically continued by imparting instruction to the platoon and the skeleton squadron. Adherence to such a schedule will make it possible to devote the time spent in field training to the execution of musketry problems and exercises by war-strength squadrons and larger units. Moreover, the time allotted to field training will thus suffice to take care of all demands. One must bear in mind, however, that this schedule presupposes the training of the squad, platoon and skeleton squadron to have been concluded in garrison. Although this is entirely feasible, yet unfortunately it is not always done; hence the complaint that the time allotted to training in the training camps is inadequate. But there have always been people who can never get ready; moreover, this class will never become completely extinct.

The training of the regiment is not concluded, however, with the time spent in the training camps. The latter cannot replace a maneuver area in the country. Difficulties which in the country might lead to most disastrous friction are never encountered in the training camps, where, even outside of the roads, practically the

entire terrain is passable, while impassable places and difficult terrain features are known to both the troops and commanders alike. Reconnaissance of the terrain, though it gains in importance right along because of the steady increase in the number of heavy vehicles, is as a rule entirely ignored in the training camps; unable to disclose anything new in the familiar terrain, it becomes superfluous.

A training period of from ten to fourteen days should be allotted to regimental field exercises. The harvest in the field not being completed until mid-August, these exercises will be of no value prior to that time. One battery of artillery must be attached to each regiment, for a cavalry combat without artillery is unthinkable. Although the regiment, while in the training camp, might very well do without this battery—for the training goes primarily into the details of instruction which can be accomplished without the actual presence of artillery—yet field exercises held without artillery would be of little avail. These field exercises offer the best opportunity for instilling a mutual appreciation of the distinctive characteristics of the two arms. The cavalry officer thus learns to pay respect to his artillery, while the artillery officer becomes acquainted with cavalry tactics and realizes that he has to command his battery in an entirely different manner than when operating as a part of an infantry division.

Moreover, it would be desirable to have, in addition to the artillery, other arms, mechanized units in particular, participate in some of the field exercises. The presence of a variety of arms would permit of a greater variety of situations.

These regimental field exercises, which form part of the regular training schedule, constitute the continuation of the training in the training camps. In planning the individual exercises, the regimental commander is not hampered by any such restrictions as are encountered in the training camp. Hence in the field he is at liberty to select the problems in which he proposes to train his regiment.

Yet the object of these exercises would not be achieved, were they staged with two parties opposing each other, just as is done during maneuvers on a large scale. On the contrary, each problem must pursue a distinct training object, and assurance must be had that the object in question is actually attained in each case. As to the regimental commander himself, the formulation and execution of a ten-day field exercise afford excellent practice. For he will have to weigh carefully every detail, a process which obtains also in the planning of a maneuver on a large scale; thus acquiring splendid experience in the formulation of plans for the latter.

For the purpose of emphasizing the importance of obstacles such as will confront troops on the march in open country, it is advisable frequently to simulate road and bridge destructions. This will teach an object lesson of the value of the regimental engineers. The fact that

the latter cannot be dispensed with when the regiment is moving, does not become apparent in garrison and in the training camp, and so receives little or no attention. It is not necessary to simulate the destruction of large objects. Small ditches and marshy places which cannot ordinarily be crossed or avoided, suffice to show the manner in which the regiment will negotiate such obstacles.

All vehicles belonging to the regimental train are organized into a combat train and made to function as in war. The training camps offer only limited possibilities for operating the combat train. Inasmuch as practically the entire training area is passable for vehicles even off the existing roads, one is apt not to appreciate the difficulties which even an ordinary ditch might entail for the combat train. If the training area of one regiment adjoins that of another, it is highly desirable that both should engage occasionally in joint maneuvers.

Field exercises conducted by individual regiments, however, do not suffice to meet all the requirements that modern cavalry will have to fill. The regiment as such is too small a unit to permit the completion of its training to be regarded as meeting also the requirements of the major army cavalry unit; that is, the cavalry division. The training camps are far too small to accommodate the exercises of a cavalry division; as a matter of fact, they are not even large enough for a demonstration of dismounted action by a complete cavalry division.

Just as the regiment trains in the field, so must the cavalry division with all its attached elements likewise take the field every year for several days. The division commander requires an opportunity to perfect himself in the command of his division; this, in turn, calls for field exercises. Here, too, it would be wrong to conduct the field exercises as one would stage a maneuver on a large scale. Hence the division must execute definite problems wherein the simulated enemy usually plays only a minor rôle.

Army cavalry in war operates in large units; that is, cavalry divisions and cavalry corps. Except for the purpose of maneuvers, cavalry divisions have not been assembled in Germany for years; while training of an entire cavalry corps has not taken place at all since the war. How, then, are we to gather and develop experiences other than by acquiring them by actually commanding and employing large cavalry units? It takes actual practice to qualify for the command of a cavalry corps; war games and map problems alone cannot produce this.

Joint exercises of from two to three cavalry divisions, naturally, entail considerable expense. One can well afford the cost, however, if due economy is exercised in other respects. In the interest of the development of the cavalry arm, these exercises of units exceeding division strength are essential. In the same manner as the field exercises of adjoining regiments may be arranged as to time and space, so that several regiments can occasionally stage joint exercises, one should be able to bring one's

cavalry divisions together for combined maneuvers. These divisions, however, should not oppose each other, but, as a cavalry corps, ought to operate against another adversary who may be represented by garrisons in the vicinity of the training area.

What the cavalry needs most—and its importance must be stressed again and again—are exercises by large units. These exercises will afford the commanders an opportunity to become proficient in the proper employment of a large body of cavalry with artillery and other troops attached; at the same time, the regiments will learn to operate as a component part of the division. In 1914, the German cavalry went to war without having been adequately trained in dismounted action within the framework of the division. Although the German cavalry of today masters the technique of the fire fight of the regiment, yet unfortunately it has not had sufficient opportunity to acquire a similar technique with respect to the employment of large bodies of cavalry. Of course, it will not do to stage these exercises only in isolated cases; on the contrary, they must develop into a regular practice in order to acquire experience for the technique of moving large bodies of cavalry and a certain degree of natural expertness in commanding them.

Although combat exercises in the field cannot be held until after the harvest is gathered in order to avoid damaging the crops, reconnaissance exercises, either on a large or small scale, may unhesitatingly take place during the summer; for the principal object of the latter is reconnaissance rather than combat. The reconnaissance units are able to move so as to avoid injuring the crops. In planning a reconnaissance exercise, it will be necessary to make a clear-cut decision as to whether reconnaissance is to constitute the sole object of the exercise, or whether it is to pass from reconnaissance to combat. Whereas in the former case roads alone will suffice, in the latter one must have at one's disposal also some terrain the use of which ought not to entail too great an expense.

Prior to the war, the German cavalry engaged regularly every summer for several weeks in field exercises in connection with field training. This is no longer necessary, however, for nowadays every mounted exercise in the field implies field training. The latter includes practice in the service of communication, reconnaissance and security, as well as the execution of marches and any other duties that may confront the soldier in the field, before or after battle.

As in the case of individual and squad training, one cannot afford to crowd field training into a mere few weeks but must pursue it throughout the year, if one wishes properly to teach and thoroughly to digest the lessons contained therein. This can be accomplished without difficulty, and, moreover, a very desirable variety of duties will thereby be created.

If instruction in equitation is carried on during the summer as well as during the winter; if, furthermore, individual and squad training as well as field training are

distributed over the entire year, notwithstanding the fact that the principal training period of the squad lies in the winter months; and, finally, if the various school periods, which we shall discuss later, are likewise held throughout the year—the well-defined training periods that we were accustomed to during the pre-war era, will gradually disappear. Winter and summer training no longer differ very much from each other. This alone serves to demonstrate the dissimilarity which exists between the old army consisting largely of recruits and the present one composed of men with long terms of service. While in the winter months individual training, training of small groups, and equitation are primarily stressed, the summer training schedule covers also the training of the larger units. In order to meet this demand, it goes without saying that squad training and equitation during the summer season must recede into the background to a certain extent, without however being abandoned entirely.

In its yearly training schedule, a cavalry regiment will pursue the same course from year to year practically without change. Instructions emanating from higher authority, to the effect that a certain phase of training be stressed during one year, and another phase during a subsequent training cycle, will hardly effect any changes in the regimental schedule. The cavalry regiment is so small a unit that each year its training, after completing in sequence that of the squad, platoon and squadron, must culminate in the regiment. Even though the training of small units up to and including the strength of a reinforced squadron is emphasized, this will also involve regimental training; for the problems confronting the squadron usually require a solution in which it acts as part of the regiment. Inversely, if regimental training or that of still larger units is to be stressed, it is prerequisite that the squadron and its component parts should previously have undergone a thorough course of training.

Although practical training within the regiment remains more or less unchanged from year to year, this does not apply to theoretical instruction to the same extent. The subjects to be covered during the theoretical instruction period are too many and, therefore, cannot be mastered in the course of one year. In order that every subject may receive proper attention during a soldier's term of service, it will be necessary to divide the entire subject matter into several parts; while some subjects must be taken up anew every year, others may be distributed over a number of years. If such a procedure is not followed, the result will be that the instructors will begin with the same subjects every year without being able to finish them, so that some parts of the lessons will never be touched upon at all. Furthermore, practical and theoretical instruction should be brought into accord. This object is attained quickest and with the least amount of effort if practice and theory go hand in hand.

A field in which a great deal has yet to be learned, if cavalry is to compete successfully with motorized units,

Cavalry training should include the defensive, for the defensive serves the attack.

is the technique of making long marches. The main point in this connection, however, is not the training of the horses; for that would be of importance only in instances involving forced marches. As far as long cavalry marches are concerned, the normal working capacity of our service mounts will meet all requirements. It is even of advantage, if the animals can afford to lose some weight. On the other hand, regular training must be had in rapidly passing from march to bivouac conditions and vice versa, as well as in feeding man and mount under difficult circumstances. Hence long marches, too, must be included in the yearly training schedule of the cavalry.

In view of the great march performances demanded of modern cavalry, endurance rides are again gaining in popularity. For these exercises it is less important to accomplish outstanding march performances than to divide the ride properly. The officer in charge should prescribe such a low rate of march, and at the same time adequately prolong the time allotted for rest periods, that over exertion on the part of the horses will be absolutely precluded; this would in no way interfere with the training object. Not only mounted elements, but horse-drawn vehicles as well, should be made to participate in endurance marches. Yet they will be of real value only if extended over several days.

A phenomenon frequently met with deserves to be mentioned here because of its great importance with regard to cavalry training: namely, the fact that exercises involving defensive action do not appeal to cavalry and, for that reason, fail to receive the attention that is due them. One may perhaps offer an excuse for this by pointing to the German soldier's antipathy to any form of defense. For centuries he has been trained in offensive tactics. Also, defensive action as a rule requires the presence of a strong adversary. For the purpose of representing the latter, it would, however, be necessary to reduce the training force; but this is the very thing one wishes to avoid. Then, too, an exercise in defensive action of necessity takes up considerable time, if it is to serve its purpose. Yet all these reasons should never constitute an excuse for insufficient training in defensive action, if not for its complete omission.

Paradoxically as it may sound at first, yet the defense serves the attack. The more thoroughly a force has been trained in defensive action, the wider a zone it will be able to hold. Consequently, the thinner the defense can be made, the stronger will be the force that can be made available for aggressive action at some other point of the line.

During an attack executed by army cavalry operating independently, some of its elements will of necessity resort to defensive action. Delaying action, a method of fighting which is particularly characteristic of cavalry, presupposes defensive measures. One should not underestimate the difficulties encountered in training for de-

defensive action, nor believe that a force which knows how to attack, also knows how to put up a skillful defense without having undergone special training. To dig in rapidly and skillfully; to emplace the machine guns so that they will interlock and cover each other's flank; to establish a final protective line without gaps; to distribute judiciously one's forces, at the same time making provision for camouflage; and to conceal oneself from hostile observation—all require a high degree of training and must be thoroughly practiced. It would be ideal to think that we need not resort to defensive action in a future war. Actual experience would soon destroy such an illusion.

Every year the regiments engage in exercises during which man and mount are required to swim. Although it hardly ever occurred during the World War that large units were compelled to cross rivers by swimming, the army cavalry nevertheless must not be deprived of its ability to negotiate any water course by that method. Obviously, it will always be small cavalry forces that actually will have to resort to swimming. Do we know, however, beforehand which unit it will be that must swim? It is for this reason that the entire cavalry must receive this instruction.

Aside from swimming, the matter of transferring cavalry vehicles across a water course deserves likewise greater attention than formerly. The skill which a regiment exhibits in negotiating a water course must not be measured merely by the time in which the men and their mounts reach the opposite bank; on the contrary, the time spent in moving all combat vehicles across the water should also be considered. And so we observe once more how important the regimental pioneer and demolition squad is after all. The regiment must be capable of crossing a river by means of its own resources without having to rely upon the assistance of its division. The regimental pioneer and demolition squad constitutes the training school in which an adequate number of noncommissioned officers and privates of the squadrons receive instruction in rowing.

With regard to training the squadron in engineer duties, it suffices, in addition to having personnel trained in rowing, to possess several men who are capable of executing simple demolitions and constructing small ferries. Here, too, it must be emphasized that it is better to train a few good men than to give superficial instruction to many. All other engineer duties, particularly those incident to the construction of field works, are duties of the engineer squadron.

In addition to the pioneer and demolition squad, the regiment requires the services of a large number of other specialists. The thorough training of these men presupposes that the soldier who is to receive special training specialize in one definite duty only and remain on that duty throughout his term of service. Otherwise one will develop amateurs instead of specialists, although a great many specialists may be carried on paper. The assump-

tion that anyone can, upon brief notice, qualify for technical duties, implies a failure to appreciate the necessary requirements for such duties. Only under rare circumstances is it justifiable to train one and the same man in more than one specialist duty; for, as a rule, he cannot be employed on more than one job.

If really well-trained specialists are desired, they should all be placed in a permanent organization so as to enable them to improve their special qualifications right along.

In order to take full advantage of the riding hall and other garrison installations for training purposes, it is advisable to divide the squadron for the daily training into two parts of equal strength and place each subdivision under the command of a squadron officer. While one part is training outside of the limits of the garrison, the other part on that day has at its disposal all the facilities of the military post.

By granting each of the two officers in charge a certain amount of freedom in conducting the training of his group of men, which of course must be carried on under the direction and supervision of the squadron commander, the latter will instill in these officers, as well as in the other instructors, a considerably greater sense of responsibility and pleasure in working than would otherwise obtain. The interest which the squadron officers will take in their duties will be enhanced still more, if they are entrusted with a certain amount of responsibility not only for the training of the squadron, but for its administration as well. Such a procedure offers a splendid opportunity for an officer to prepare himself for the position of squadron commander which he will eventually occupy. It has been actually tried and has fully proven its merits.

Instruction in marksmanship is given in accordance with the manual on marksmanship which applies to all branches of the service. This training manual stresses principally accuracy in firing and for musketry problems considers only targets up to 300 meters (328 yards). Yet in the majority of cases in combat, cavalry will have to open fire at much greater distances. Hence it would be desirable, if the manual on marksmanship, in the chapter dealing with combat firing, were to point out that, with regard to cavalry, controlled fire by group at medium and long ranges is of particular importance. Also long-range concentrations delivered by all the light machine guns of a squadron must be practiced. This method of fire will find frequent application with a view to surprising the enemy.

It has been stressed before that the squadron commander cannot carry out the great variety of duties devolving upon him alone, but that he must to this end train a staff of assistants. This, then, leads us up to the subject of training leaders, which in importance transcends all else.

The squadron commander must personally hold his noncommissioned officers' school. In addition to this, he should conduct an equitation class for the benefit of the riding instructors of the squadron. He may organize this

class according to his own particular leanings. Thus he will have an opportunity to inculcate in his assistant instructors his own principles and convictions regarding equitation. Two or three periods a week will amply satisfy the needs of this equitation class.

The training of instructors, the noncommissioned officers' school and, finally, the equitation class for riding instructors should constitute the only squadron duties that the squadron commander is called upon to perform personally and regularly. There remain so many other responsibilities for the squadron commander to look after that he would be unable to do them justice, if he took upon himself any work that really belongs to his subordinate leaders. The higher the average degree of training of the noncommissioned officers is, the less difficulty the squadron commander will encounter in training his squadron as a whole, and the more efficient the latter will be.

In instructing his noncommissioned officers in military and technical subjects, the squadron commander must not forget, however, to direct his particular aim towards building up the morale of these men; for the spirit of the noncommissioned officers will be reflected in the morale of the entire squadron. Everyone whose duty it is to command others should forever bear uppermost in mind that the personal example is the best medium for building up a high morale in his subordinates.

What has been said of the squadron commander with regard to his noncommissioned officers and squadron, applies even more forcibly to the regimental commander with respect to his corps of officers and regiment. The higher the plane to which he lifts his officers, the more eagerly will they cooperate, and the more successful will they be in training the regiment. Any expedient that has for its object the scientific and general education of the regimental officers will yield ample returns on the drill field.

Self-reliance and skill, mobility and celerity are the qualities which the regimental commander must instill into his officers and the entire regiment, being forever mindful of the words once uttered by Field Marshal v. Moltke: "The cavalry's efficiency in combat is founded upon celerity: first of all, upon celerity in recognizing and estimating the situation; next, upon celerity in arriving at a decision; and, finally, upon celerity in executing the plan."

CONCLUSION

In closing this discussion, let us sum up once more briefly the demands that must be made in order to assure progress of the cavalry arm.

Modern warfare calls for mass employment of cavalry. This principle must be followed when it is a question of making use of army cavalry. For this reason, even in theoretical exercises involving a large force of such troops, cavalry corps, rather than individual cavalry divisions, should be employed.

The cavalry division is not composed solely of cavalry. Just like the infantry division, it is a mixed unit of all arms. Proportionate to its strength, it should, therefore, contain all those other arms that are included in the infantry division. Moreover, these components must constitute permanent organic parts of the cavalry division, even in time of peace.

The cavalry regiment consisting of four squadrons is too weak to accomplish its multifarious missions, in particular those pertaining to combat. The minimum organic strength of the regiment should, therefore, comprise six rifle squadrons and one strong machine-gun squadron. Owing to the restrictions to which Germany is subjected by the terms of the Versailles Treaty, this demand unfortunately cannot be satisfied at the present time. Yet, for the sake of experimentation, the regimental organization of six rifle squadrons should be given a trial.

In view of the absence of armored cars, new means must be found to facilitate reconnaissance by army cavalry, for reconnaissance detachments of the customary strength and composition of former years are no longer capable of fulfilling their object.

Mounted engineer units must be organized.

In the interest of a strong army cavalry, division cavalry should confine itself to absolute essentials. For the purpose of relieving the division cavalry of certain duties, mounted platoons should be organized in the infantry regiments.

Training of the lower units of the cavalry regiments must take place during the months when the troops may move across country without causing any damage to the crops, that is to say, during the period beginning with October and ending with March. Furthermore, instruction in equitation ought not to cease with the completion of the winter training period but should continue throughout the summer.

Each cavalry division must engage in maneuvers regularly every year. At least every other year, the cavalry divisions should be organized into several cavalry corps for corps exercises.

Even in time of peace, the organization of the cavalry must include a superior technical commander in order to insure uniform training throughout.

These demands make due allowance for the armament limitations which restrict Germany's natural military development. Hence, weapons not granted the German army have not been taken into consideration. Nor do these requirements transgress the limitations of existing possibilities. Moreover, the expense that would be incurred in adopting these recommendations are not apt to exceed the annual appropriations.

Let us hope that the near future will bring us the realization of these demands—for the good of the cavalry arm.

THE END

NOTES FROM THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY

What Would You Do?

"I was in a tough spot," began Lieutenant Nuttsan Bolts, "and now that the war is over, I'd still like to know the answer.

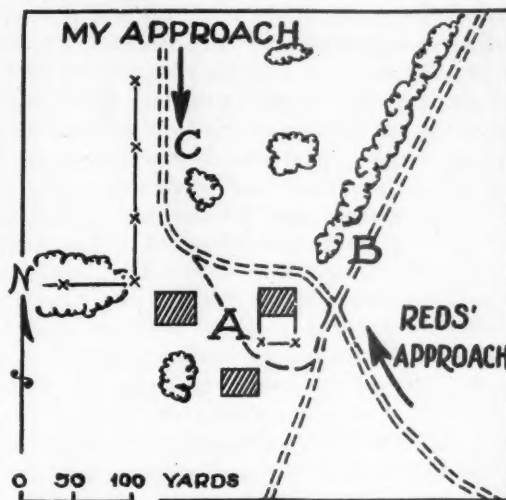
"I was in command of a two-car scout car section on a mission of gaining and maintaining contact with an enemy cavalry regiment. The general locality of the Red regiment was known. I was getting close. I had seen Red scout car activities, and, from time to time, I could get a glimpse of their combat trains. It was about an hour before dark and I had just received a message from another section operating nearby that one of its cars was to join me.

"Well, there I was. Time was important because of visibility. I didn't want to stay sitting on a crossroad waiting for the car to join. So I radioed it to join at a fixed point, left instructions with my second car to await its arrival, and then for both to join me.

"Then I started out. After moving about a mile, the car entered the farmyard shown at A in the sketch above. The driver cut the motor and was about to dismount when, less than 100 yards from me on the east side of the farmhouse, a Red scout-car passed. A short time later, another. Apparently I was not observed. My caliber .50 was mounted at the right forward position, and, while ready to open fire if necessary, I noted that the Red cars that had pulled up had either left unobserved or had cut off their motors.

"What to do! If I started my motor in the quiet of the place I would disclose my presence. Yet here was some quarry—two Red scout-cars, neither of which apparently had seen me. If I pulled out in the direction from which I had entered, I would certainly be observed and fired at; if I continued in the direction I was facing (to the south), I would no doubt be running hopelessly into further difficulties, necessitating using the trail upon which these two cars had just come in.

"So I removed the caliber .50 from the adapter and prepared the ground mount. As I was advancing dismounted to the south edge of the farmyard, I encountered the Red section leader. More surprised than we were, we took him prisoner. We had about subdued him when we ran into another lone scout. He too was taken, but with the necessary pistol shooting, the Red cars certainly would know that something was up. Quickly we ad-



vanced the gun to a ground firing position and opened fire on the Red cars, which I found had upon arrival taken cover under the trees at B. Only the rear end of the rear car was in view when I opened fire. We let them have it, and the cars, after some confusion, started, swung around and opened fire on me and my assistant. We put one car out of action, and the other withdrew. It was almost dark then, and, my assistant killed, I, wounded, managed to drag the gun back to the car. In the meantime my driver had started the motor. We hightailed out, and just as we reached the place marked C on the sketch, the other Red car, the one that had withdrawn, opened fire on me at about 200 yards in stationary position. That ended the war as far as I was concerned. My car was out of action. You see, in my hurry to get out of the farmyard, I didn't have time to mount the caliber .50, and, as far as I know, that weapon has never yet been fired effectively from the hip.

"Well, there you have the whole story. Other than the Gods of War being either with or agin me, I'll swear I don't know what I should have done. It was a surprise for both sides, and so I ask you, in a situation of that kind, in retrospect,

WHAT WOULD YOU DO?

(For solution, turn the page)

SOLUTION AND DISCUSSION

"Sure enough," said our ex-looie, "these things happen so quickly that you can't estimate how little time it all takes. And to this day, I doubt that I would have done other than I did."

"Well," spoke up one of those present, "it's hard to visualize the entire situation, but I'll tell you what you should *not* have done. There are always basic principles, and those you apparently ignored in some respects. Suppose, for example, you had *not* left your other car behind. Upon arrival at the farmhouse, you would then have had a supporting car to either assist you in moving forward from place to place, or you would have had supporting fire to extricate yourself from your position.

"Suppose, secondly, that you had *not* cut off your motor. You would then have been able to move out without any delay, seeing that you were in a 'pocket' with two-to-one chances. Suppose also that you had turned your car to the rear upon halting, which is one of the principles to facilitate get-away in case of surprise.

"Suppose further that instead of dismounting your gun you had kept it in the rear position to cover your withdrawal, and, as you say, if the cars had pulled into cover anyway, in your withdrawal your second car would—or should—have come to your support.

"Have you ever been rabbit or pheasant hunting, and almost stepped on your intended prey? Well, you probably got over the shock of the surprise in time to shoot, but if, in the meantime, someone had started shooting at you, do you think you would have hit it? I doubt it. So you see that once in the hole, you had so cut yourself off that you were in up to your neck. Therefore, it isn't so much what you did as what you failed to do. And, interestingly enough, all the points at hand are listed under tactical considerations for the handling of scout cars. These may be summarized, as was told me by an old-timer: always have observation, and then be gun-sited, car-sited, and far-sighted." (*Department of Tactics, The Cavalry School.*)

Cavalry's Share of Army's Enlisted Increase

THE Cavalry's share of the 46,250 additional men which Congress recently authorized for the Army is 2,651.

This increase in effect brings all existing horsed units to the strength authorized by Tables of Organization, 1928 (peace) with the exception of the 2d and 13th cavalry regiments which are raised to War Strength, less one squadron. The mechanized units of the cavalry: i.e., the

1st Cavalry (Mecz), Troop A, 1st Armored Car Squadron, and Headquarters Troop, 7th Cavalry Brigade (Mecz), are dealt with just as generously, and have been authorized the increase requested by the Chief of Cavalry.

With this increase, the total authorized strength of the cavalry for the current fiscal year is 10,699.

The actual increase, however, is greater than 2,651, nearly approaching 3,000. For many years, the War Department has kept the actual strength of all arms about four and one-half per cent below their authorized strength, in order to maintain a full complement of enlisted men in our foreign possessions at all times. Enlisted men who were being returned from overseas were actually replaced before their return by other enlisted men *en route*. In order not to exceed the mean strength of 118,750, formerly authorized for the Army, it was, therefore, necessary to keep all branches of service in the continental United States below their authorized strength. The actual strength thus allowed was called the Recruiting Strength.

With the increase of 46,250 enlisted men, however, the recruiting strength is done away with, as the War Department is maintaining a "foreign service pool" independent of the strength of arms. Hence, our present authorized strength is our actual strength. There appears below the strength authorized for each cavalry unit for the fiscal year 1936:

Headquarters, 1st Cavalry Division	61
Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Division.....	147
Headquarters, Special Troops, 1st Cavalry Division	8
Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade	79
Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade	79
Headquarters Troop, 7th Cavalry Brigade (Mecz)	61
Troop A, 1st Armored Car Squadron	84
1st Cavalry (Mecz)	749
2d Cavalry	969
3d Cavalry	701
4th Cavalry	700
5th Cavalry	700
6th Cavalry	700
7th Cavalry	700
8th Cavalry	700
9th Cavalry	450
Headquarters and 1st Squadron, 10th Cavalry.....	332
2d Squadron, 10th Cavalry	240
Machine-Gun Troop, 10th Cavalry	107
11th Cavalry	700
12th Cavalry	700
13th Cavalry	969
14th Cavalry	700
Detachment, Cavalry School	51
Detachment, Office Chief of Cavalry	12
Total	10,699

For the fiscal year 1936, the increase authorized will be in the grade of private only. It is hoped that future appropriations may allow an increase of noncommissioned grades and specialist ratings.

The Increasing Importance of Horsemanship

By MAJOR WILFRID M. BLUNT, Cavalry

WE all have heard at one time or another the statement that this or that development will win the next war; some say *tanks*, some say *aeroplanes*, and some say *chemicals*. These various advocates are special pleaders endeavoring to impress the public with the importance of the service they advocate. While it is true that each plays its part, the respective advocates of each of these means of warfare are inclined to emphasize the capabilities of these mechanical means and to overlook the indisputable fact that to hold what has been gained demands the presence of troops actually on the ground. While war means killing, killing is not the object of war. The real object of each belligerent is to impose his will on the enemy at the earliest moment possible, by overcoming his resistance or by crippling his nerve centers. The objectives may be his armed forces, his transportation system, or his sources of supply.

Reduced to simplest terms, success in war is a question of *speed*. In the Zone of the Interior it is speed in recruiting, speed in providing equipment, speed in training, and speed in sending troops to the Theater of Operations. In the Theater of Operations it is speed in concentrations, speed in seizing terrain, or speed in preparing to launch an attack. Both of the latter involve speed in moving across country.

Since the World War the efforts of all nations have been concentrated on putting "legs" on their fighting forces. In the mechanical field we have seen faster ships, faster aeroplanes, faster armored vehicles, and improved radios. In addition to the great increase in the use of motor transportation to expedite the movement of troops and supplies in back areas, scout cars have been placed in our Cavalry regiments to speed up reconnaissance and radios have been provided to speed up communications. A number of experiments have been made in mechanization and you are all familiar with our mechanized regiment. Although such troops have strategical mobility, they are extremely costly and there are many limitations on their tactical employment. Thus while the improved mechanical means will be a great assistance, success will still depend on the man with a gun in his hand, on hobnails or on horseback. The most important characteristics of Cavalry are its march variable and its speed in moving across country.

In the physical field the possibilities are much more limited as they are controlled by the capabilities of men on animals. Some improvements in marching rates have been made by lightening the pack of the foot-soldier and reducing the load carried by the trooper's horse. Recognizing the wide variation in the load carried by the latter

on account of the size of the riders, consideration is now being given to limiting the weight of men accepted for Cavalry service. While there is a definite limit to what can be expected of horses, comparatively few have reached this limit; although the quality of riding horses in this country is constantly improving. Due to the improvement in the remounts furnished in the last few years, it has been possible to step up the marching rate of Cavalry from 5 to 6 miles per hour for all day marches and 7 to 10 miles per hour for shorter distances. One example of this is the march of the 1st Cavalry Brigade in the San Antonio maneuvers when it marched 28 miles in 4 hours. Another example is the 3rd Cavalry Brigade's march of 100 miles in 24 hours at Fort Riley in 1932. While such performances are comparatively easy for individuals or small groups, they are much more difficult in a large command. It must be borne in mind that the rate of march of a command is controlled by the condition of the slowest elements or individuals. To make the fast marches required under modern conditions, officers must be able to gauge the condition and capabilities not only of their own mounts but also of those in their commands. This requires a much greater knowledge of horses than can be gained in the routine garrison training of those fortunate enough to be with troops.

While the developments of science have stepped up the tempo of warfare and placed an increased emphasis on speed, modern conditions make its realization more difficult. With the industrialization of this country, correspondingly fewer men are recruited from the farms, and even in country districts the automobile has replaced the horse for transportation. Prior to the World War, almost all Cavalry officers were with troops and, as very few had automobiles, horses were used for transportation as well as for recreation. Now only about half of our officers are with troops and practically everyone has an automobile. Officers on detached service often find it difficult if not impossible to ride. Even those on duty with troops find an automobile not only a convenience, but often a necessity on our larger posts where schedules are frequently based on the presumption that automobiles will be used.

Realizing the importance of horsemanship and horsemastership, the War Department now requires a rating on these subjects to be entered on the efficiency report of cavalry officers.

Another adverse factor is the accumulation of restrictions which have been placed on the ownership of private mounts. I think everyone will agree that the officer who has horses of his own rides far more than one who does not. However, ownership of private mounts has been

made so difficult that today comparatively few officers own their own horses. The net result of these conditions is that the average cavalry officer rides much less than formerly, though the necessity for all cavalry officers to be expert horsemen is greater than ever. It is true that practically every cavalry officer has had the advantage of a course at the Cavalry School during the first 5 years of his service. While there he receives the best instruction available, although much of his time must be devoted to other things. The best horsemen go back for a special course in equitation, but the majority, who need the instruction most, return to regiments. It is this group particularly that we should help and the following means suggest themselves:

First: To promote and encourage more participation in local horse activities, particularly those demanding speed and endurance.

This is a matter for local commanders and should be developed along broad lines with the object of encouraging the participation of the greatest number of officers.

Second: To liberalize the conditions affecting the ownership of private mounts.

This is a matter for action by the War Department, and Congress. The Chief of Cavalry is keenly interested in this question and is endeavoring to liberalize the provisions of the regulation on the purchase of mounts and to obtain legislation authorizing the maintenance of an additional mount.

Graduates, The Cavalry School, 1935

(Cavalry personnel unless otherwise shown.)

REGULAR COURSE

Allan, Charles C. W., First Lieutenant.
Cook, Brainard S., Second Lieutenant.
Croswell, Henry B., Second Lieutenant.
Curtis, James O., Jr., Second Lieutenant.
Del Campo, Angelo R., Second Lieutenant.
Dodge, Charles G., Second Lieutenant.
Dudley, John H., Second Lieutenant.
Dunn, Wayne J., First Lieutenant.
Ellis, Harvie R., First Lieutenant (Veterinary Corps).
Harris, Albert E., Second Lieutenant.
Howze, Hamilton H., Second Lieutenant.
Hughes, Oliver W., First Lieutenant (Infantry).
Johnson, Marvin C., Second Lieutenant.
Kanes, O'Neill K., Second Lieutenant.
Lichirie, Cornelius A., Second Lieutenant.
Merrill, Frank D., First Lieutenant.
Olson, Jergen B., Second Lieutenant.
Porter, Robert W., Jr., Second Lieutenant.
Robbins, Chandler P., Jr., First Lieutenant.
Rogers, Glenn F., Second Lieutenant.
Schorr, Donald M., First Lieutenant.
Waters, John K., Second Lieutenant.
Watt, David A., Jr., First Lieutenant.
Wing, Franklin F., Jr., Second Lieutenant.

ADVANCED EQUITATION COURSE

Acklen, Milton A., First Lieutenant.
Carns, Edwin H. J., First Lieutenant.
Darling, Clarence K., First Lieutenant.
Doan, Leander LaC., First Lieutenant.
Harkins, Paul D., First Lieutenant.
Hoge, Kenneth G., First Lieutenant.
Hunter, William H., First Lieutenant.
Luebberrmann, Henri A., First Lieutenant.
Minniece, John G., Jr., First Lieutenant.
Moore, Zachery W., First Lieutenant.

POST OF FORT RILEY COURSE

Barnhart, Frank H., Major.
Carter, Leslie D., Captain.
DeWitt, Calvin, Jr., Major.
Featherstone, Herbert E., Major.
Johnson, John B., Lieutenant Colonel.
Kinnison, Henry L., Jr., Captain.
Lambert, Joseph I., Captain.
Maddox, Halley G., First Lieutenant.
Matteson, Milo H., First Lieutenant.
Meehan, Charles G., First Lieutenant.
Mudgett, Gilman C., First Lieutenant.
Rice, John L., Major.
Shotwell, Philip B., Captain.
Shufelt, James V. V., Captain.
Thayer, Basil G., First Lieutenant.
Thomson, Earl F., First Lieutenant.
Wheeler, John P., Major.

NATIONAL GUARD AND RESERVE TROOP OFFICERS' COURSE

Bevington, Clifford R., Captain, 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard.
Bloomer, Edgar N., Captain, 102d Cavalry, New Jersey National Guard.
Bork, Raymond J., Captain, 109th Cavalry, Tennessee National Guard.
Brady, Ralph W. E., First Lieutenant, 107th Cavalry, Ohio National Guard.
Branniff, Earl C., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Castillo, Jose A., First Lieutenant, 111th Cavalry, New Mexico National Guard.
Cowles, Rollin J., Captain, 113th Cavalry, Iowa National Guard.
Edwards, Stanley, Captain, 115th Cavalry, Wyoming National Guard.
Graham, John R., Jr., Second Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Hall, Ross C., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Henry, Herman K., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Herndon, John E., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Jones, William L., First Lieutenant, 108th Cavalry, Louisiana National Guard.
Kellogg, Jesse L., Captain, Cavalry-Reserve.
Kurland, Leon K., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
McGhee, Foster S., Captain, 103d Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard.
Mills, Leo W., First Lieutenant, 114th Cavalry, Kansas National Guard.
Reitch, Joseph L., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Siebert, Fred W., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Spieldoch, Tobias M., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Stevens, Allen J., Captain, 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania National Guard.
Taylor, Walter R., Second Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Thompson, Cornelius K., Second Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.
Town, Claire M., First Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve.

NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS' COURSE

Benson, Paul L., Sergeant, Headquarters Troop, 13th Cavalry.
Bergson, Osmund, Corporal, Headquarters and Headquarters Battery and Combat Trains, 1st Battalion, 14th Field Artillery.
Betts, William G., Sergeant, Troop B, 13th Cavalry.
Brown, Charley P., Sergeant, Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry.
*Butler, Clifford J., Corporal, Troop B, 3d Cavalry.
*Carter, Samuel, Corporal, Machine-Gun Troop, 10th Cavalry.
*Childers, Roy, Sergeant, Machine-Gun Troop, 2d Cavalry.
Corrigan, Peter K., Sergeant, Troop E, 8th Cavalry.
*Georisch, Robert W., Corporal, Troop E, 13th Cavalry.
*Herman, William F., Sergeant, Troop B, 14th Cavalry.
Jones, Lester A., Sergeant, Machine-Gun Troop, 13th Cavalry.
*Kelley, Tilman A., Corporal, Troop A, 7th Cavalry.
Lane, James E., Sergeant, Troop E, 6th Cavalry.
Lang, Robert M., Corporal, Troop B, 10th Cavalry.
*Martin, James, Sergeant, Troop A, 11th Cavalry.
*Mills, Avery G., Corporal, Troop F, 13th Cavalry.
Minthorn, Blair C., Corporal, Troop B, 2d Cavalry.
Mosingo, John W., Sergeant, Troop F, 12th Cavalry.
*Null, Howard P., Sergeant, Troop E, 2d Cavalry.
O'Brien, Lynn H., Sergeant, Battery A, 14th Field Artillery.
*Owens, James P., Sergeant, Troop A, 5th Cavalry.
Resser, John A., Sergeant, Troop E, 3d Cavalry.
Sears, Thomas W., Sergeant, Machine-Gun Troop, 4th Cavalry.
Smith, Lee A., Sergeant, Headquarters Troop, 12th Cavalry.
Stickel, Malcolm, Corporal, Troop A, 2d Cavalry.
Tibbs, William, Corporal, Troop E, 14th Cavalry.

*Also completed non-commissioned officers' advanced equitation course.

Minute Men of the Next War

BY MAJOR GENERAL JOHNSON HAGOOD
Commanding Third Field Army

GEORGE WASHINGTON never said "I cannot tell a lie." Pershing never said "Lafayette, we are here." And the author of this article never said that he could train a soldier in ten days. But Forrest did say that victory comes to the one who gets there first with the most men. And it is upon this theory that officers here and there throughout the Army are interesting themselves in the development of rapid training methods by which, if the worst comes to the worst, soldiers can be put into the field in a time that is incredibly shorter than what most of us have heretofore been led to believe.

The training of a soldier may be broken down under three general heads: Technical Knowledge, Experience, Character.

Time is the all important consideration. So let us analyze the subject under each of these headings and see to what extent the Time Factor affects the results.

Technical Knowledge: The technique of the military profession as a whole has never been mastered by man. But so far as the individual soldier is concerned, a raw recruit may require no technical training at all. He may already have all the technical knowledge that is required of him to perform his job in the Army. For example, if a man be a truck driver in civil life, he can drive a truck in the Army. On the other hand, if a man be a bellhop, it may not be possible to make him into an aviator.

Under the old system of training it made no difference whether a man was a truck driver, a bellhop or a plumber; nor whether he was to be made into a rifleman, a cannoneer or a cook. The first thing to do was to make him into a soldier. And to do this it was the practice to

Six months in active campaign may give a man more experience than 20 years in the Regular Army.

fill him up with a lot of nonsense that was of no practical value to him as a soldier either in peace or war.

Under the new system we first determine what we propose to do with the man—what position he is to play on the team. We next determine to what extent he is already qualified to play that part. And finally we set ourselves to make up his deficiencies in the shortest possible time. For example, if a man is to be a baker, we do not start out by teaching him close order drill or the customs of the service. If he is to be a cannoneer, we teach him some particular duty at the gun. If he is to be an infantryman, we teach him to shoot his rifle and we do not for the moment concern ourselves with whether or not he can dismantle a machine gun blindfolded.

As a further illustration: If you were the captain of an old-fashioned light battery, you would find that it takes a long time to train a driver to put up a creditable show with the parade ground countermarches and wheels. But if you had a modern motorized battery, you would find no difficulty in picking up your motor mechanics and drivers already trained. This difference in the time factor is still further emphasized if the comparison be made between a newly-organized battery with all new men and horses, on the one hand, and on the other, and an old battery in which you are absorbing a single recruit. Thus we see that the time factor in giving a soldier technical knowledge is variable.

Experience: The two essential factors of experience are



23d Infantry on march in gas masks—13th day of training



23d Infantry recruits
firing from four positions on seventh day of training

time and opportunity. Six months in active campaign may give a man more experience than twenty years in the Regular Army. The time factor in experience is something we cannot overlook and in many cases we cannot shorten.

Character: The development of military character is a question of time and association. The time factor is most essential and, generally speaking, military character cannot be developed in a hurry.

In General: From the above it is evident that there is no short cut in the process of making a thoroughly trained and experienced soldier. It is only on the field of battle that you can make a veteran of a recruit. But wars are fought with recruits and the least that we can do is to give our war-time recruits the maximum amount of technical training in the time at our disposal. We should not repeat the tragedy of the last war, when, after being in the war for over fifteen months, we sent 200,000 men to France who had never been taught to use their weapons.

THE TRAINING OF PEACE-TIME RECRUITS

The training of peace-time recruits in itself is not a matter of very great importance; certainly not a matter of concern to Division and Army commanders. But the development of methods by which recruits can be trained and rapidly absorbed at the outbreak of war is a matter of tremendous importance. And the development of a Can Do psychology among young officers and non-commissioned officers is vital to National Defense. One second lieutenant who believes that he can train a war-time battalion of raw men in less time than it has ever been done before is worth a dozen colonels who believe that their regiments will never be ready for action.

The essential functions of a soldier are to Shoot, to March, and to Obey.

The average young American soldier can be taught to

shoot in five hours—seven hours at most. But ordinarily he cannot be taught to make a full day's march with field equipment in less than ten days.

A day's march, therefore, is taken to be the neck of the bottle, and ten days is taken to be the time within which we try to reach our first great training objective.

We assume that the soldier can read. And for that reason we issue to each recruit a book of Instructions, wherein he will find simple explanations with diagrams to assist him in learning his duties. This is called the *Soldier's Handbook*. There is little in the handbook that a soldier cannot learn within the first ten days of his service. There is much in it that officers have failed to learn in forty years. It contains all those essentials of field service that should be required of young soldiers. It is free from all the fuss and feathers that delights the heart of the barrack-worn peace-time regular.

Printed below will be found a training order for war-time recruits. It is now in effect for training peace-time recruits in the 4th, 7th, and 8th Corps Areas. It will be noted that the High Command does not prescribe schedules. It lays out objectives and leaves to subordinates the means of accomplishing those objectives. Splendid results have been obtained in the Philippine Division (both with white and with native troops), in the 2d Division and in the 1st Cavalry Division; also at Fort Riley, Fort Sill, Fort Leavenworth, and other large commands.

So far we have only tried out the problem of absorbing recruits into existing active and inactive Regular Army units. We are reserving for a later day the more difficult problem of training new war-time organizations with all new officers and men.

The Revolutionary War, the Civil War, and even the World War saw examples of men who did things with raw troops that other people said were impossible. At Camp Funston, Kansas, the 10th Division, under com-

23d Infantry recruits in
bayonet combat on
seventh day of training



mand of General Leonard Wood, was accepted by the War Department as qualified for overseas service just one month after the day when first it was organized.

HEADQUARTERS FOURTH ARMY OFFICE OF THE COMMANDING GENERAL

TRAINING BULLETIN)
No. 1

OMAHA, NEBRASKA,
March 1, 1933.

TRAINING WAR-TIME RECRUITS

1. **ASSIGNMENT.**—Every line soldier, upon arrival as a War Time Recruit, will be assigned to a combat unit and his instruction will begin at once in the particular duties to which he is assigned as a member of his organization. Normally he will be taught to use his weapon, to march with his command, to obey his officers, and to perform his simple duties as a private soldier in the field. With this as a foundation, his further instruction will be developed as time will permit.

2. **USE OF WEAPONS.**—This instruction will be started within twenty-four hours after the soldier joins. It will begin with his primary weapon. In the case of artillery, machine guns and the like, the soldier will be taught the particular duty to which he has been assigned in the gun crew. The instruction will include such general description and nomenclature as is essential for the intelligent use of the weapon—no more. It will include gallery practice, sub-caliber and such similar exercises as may be applicable, followed by firing service ammunition at the first opportunity. Having been instructed in his primary duties with his primary weapon, the soldier will, at a later date, be instructed in the secondary duties and in the use of his secondary weapons.

3. **MARCHING.**—*a.* Within forty-eight hours after arrival, the soldier's feet will be examined and his shoes properly fitted (if the shoes in which he reported are not suitable).

b. Dismounted Troops.—The soldier's equipment will then be adjusted and he will commence marching with equipment, beginning with short distances and pushing forward progressively to a march of eight miles with full pack.

Mounted Troops.—Within forty-eight hours after arrival, the soldier will be taught to saddle, harness, bridle, groom, and care for his horse. He will then be taught to make his roll, and to pack his saddle. This will be immediately followed by marching with equipment, beginning with short

distances and pushing forward progressively to a march of twenty miles with full pack.

4. **OBEDIENCE TO ORDERS.**—Within forty-eight hours after arrival, the soldier will be instructed in the fundamental principles of obedience to orders and respect for authority. This will be done by explanations in simple language and without reading any particular articles of war or regulations. The soldier will be shown how to stand at attention and how to execute the hand and rifle salutes, but will not at this time be taught the other so-called Customs of the Service.

5. **FIELD DUTIES.**—*a.* As soon as practicable after the first forty-eight hours and within ten days after his arrival, the soldier will be taught such simple, fundamental field duties as may be applicable to his particular assignment.

b. This instruction will be concurrent with his training in the use of weapons, marching, and obedience (paragraphs 2, 3, and 4), will be conducted in the field, as far as practicable, and will include basic combat training, the essential details of musketry and field gunnery, defense against aircraft, use of gas mask, first aid, and personal hygiene.

6. **OTHER INSTRUCTION.**—*a.* After having been grounded thoroughly in the combat fundamentals, the soldier's instruction will be gradually extended by the introduction of close-order drills, ceremonies, and other exercises for the purpose of further improving and polishing him as a soldier.

b. The soldier will be made to feel from the beginning that he is an integral and essential component of his organization and that he must qualify himself to play an important part in case of emergency; that time will press and that, even though he may not be a perfect soldier, he must at least be a good soldier, the best that he can be made in the time available.

7. **SERVICES.**—The training of recruits in Service functions should be prompt and progressive, along lines similar to those for recruits of the Arms. They should regard their implements as their weapons and be taught the essential duties in the use of those implements before they are taught things of less immediate value.

BY COMMAND OF MAJOR GENERAL HAGOOD:

A. M. MILLER, JR.,
Colonel, G.S.C.,
Chief of Staff.

THE EDITOR'S SADDLE

Famous War Horses

IN recognition of the famous war horses who, by hazardous duty on fire-swept battlefields, wrote their names upon the scrolls of history, THE CAVALRY JOURNAL is publishing a series of short sketches recounting the part these animals played in our country's wars. Since the battle charger of the commanding officer was, in many cases, almost as well known to the rank and file as the officer himself, it is appropriate that we record again the faithful service of these horses in past conflicts. The first of the series, published in this number, is devoted to *Comanche*.

Campaign for National Guard Members

SINCE the publication of the last number of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL a campaign has been inaugurated for the procurement of a greater National Guard strength in the United States Cavalry Association. The Association has not enjoyed as large a percentage of members among National Guard officers as is justified by the type of JOURNAL now being produced—a JOURNAL of great professional value to all cavalrymen. In view of this situation, the National Guard drive was instituted.

While the campaign is still in its early stage, the results so far attained are most gratifying. The 52d Cavalry Brigade, Pennsylvania National Guard, composed of the 103rd and 104th Cavalry and the Brigade Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, is the first brigade to report an enrollment of 100 per cent of its officers. When the units of this brigade went to summer camp, Brigadier General Edward J. Stackpole, the brigade commander, urged all of his officers to enroll in the Association. His drive was a grand success, and every officer of that brigade, 108 in number, will receive the JOURNAL during the coming twelve months.

The 56th Cavalry Brigade, Texas National Guard, composed of the 112th and 124th Cavalry and the Brigade Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, has a record which closely rivals that of the Pennsylvania unit. Lieutenant Colonel Innis P. Swift, Cavalry, senior instructor of the 56th, has just forwarded 92 applications from the officers and organizations of that brigade. Brigadier General Louis S. Davidson has recently succeeded Brigadier General Jacob F. Wolters (now Major General, Retired) as commander of this unit.

The latest report is from Colonel Lewis B. Ballantyne, commanding the 102d Cavalry, New Jersey National Guard, who sent in memberships from 100 per cent of the officers of that regiment. Other National Guard regiments which have enrolled 100 per cent of their officers are: 114th Cavalry, Kansas National Guard, until recently

commanded by Colonel (now Brigadier General) William K. Herndon, and the 123rd Cavalry, Kentucky National Guard, commanded by Colonel H. J. Stites. Final reports have not been received from other units.

The Cavalry's Part in the Fort Benning Maneuvers

IN this number of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL we print the first of two articles concerning the 6th Cavalry's participation in the brigade maneuvers conducted at Fort Benning in May. This first story is devoted to a two-sided maneuver. The September-October JOURNAL will cover the combined brigade maneuver which extended over a period of two days. Since this series particularly stresses the cavalry's part in the maneuvers, both articles should be read with interest by all cavalrymen.

One Hundred and Three Fights and Scrimmages

IN the army of the Indian war days—an army so small that almost all of its senior officers were known either personally or by reputation throughout the service—it was generally conceded that one of the best fighting captains in the cavalry was Reuben F. Bernard, a tall, black-bearded figure of heroic proportions and great muscular activity, whose boast was that he had taken part in "one hundred and three fights and scrimmages." He served from 1855 to 1882 in the 1st Cavalry, becoming major in the 8th, and, in 1892, lieutenant colonel of the 9th. He retired a brevet brigadier general in 1896 and died in 1903.

Those who knew of his gallant career in the Indian Wars will be pleased to learn that his biography has been written by a student of military history, Mr. Don Russell of the Chicago Daily News, and that this is shortly to be published as a serial in THE CAVALRY JOURNAL, beginning with the September-October issue.

Bernard took part in several expeditions against the Apache and Navajo Indians in the Southwest before the Civil War. Following his Civil War service, which included two years' heavy fighting under Sheridan, he participated in a campaign against the Snake Indians in Oregon, leading various expeditions against Apache tribes and fighting Cochise in several actions. Later he took part in the Modoc and Bannock Wars, and led a long and severe march against the Sheepeater Indians in unexplored middle Idaho.

The story, which will appear under the title, "One Hundred and Three Fights and Scrimmages," will contain many details of Bernard's very unusual Indian war record, drawn from his unpublished reports and diaries and from descriptions of those who served with him.

SPORTS

Seventeenth Annual West Point Horse Show

By Captain Frank DeK. Huyler, Cavalry-Reserve

THE West Point Horse Show Association held its seventeenth annual exhibition on Tuesday and Wednesday, June 4th-5th. Twenty-two events made up the program, the classes being confined to hunters, jumpers and military mounts.

Though not many civilian stables made the show, the quality of the entries was most impressive. Mrs. John Hay Whitney, of Upperville, Va., had her celebrated stable on hand, making West Point for the first time. She had things pretty much her own way in the hunter division, taking all of the important awards except the Hunter Stake, which was won by *Sprig Leaf*, owned by Mr. and Mrs. Calvin Farnsworth, of West Boylston, Mass. Mrs. Whitney took the Hunter Championship with her big grey, *Kinprillis*, and the Reserve Ribbon with another grey member of her famous hunt team, *Bon Diable*. Another win of note made by the Whitney Stable was that of *Kinprillis* in the competition for the Fox Hunters Challenge Trophy, presented by Mr. and Mrs. Alvin Untermeyer. Mrs. Whitney's horses had already won a leg on the cup at The National Horse Show so the award at the Point retired the cup, exactly one year after it was first placed in competition.

Mrs. Julius Bliss, of Bronxville, was awarded the Open Jumping Championship of the show, when her bay gelding, *Bad News*, ridden by Herbert Moseley turned in a perfect performance to defeat Mrs. John J. Farrell's *Gold Grey*, ridden by Bobby Coneen. The other outstanding civilian entry of the show was *Squire*, owned by Mrs. Danny Shea, and ridden by Mr. Shea. *Squire* will be remembered for his sterling performances when a member of the Fort Myer Horse Show team two years ago. Chief among his awards at West Point was the blue in the Olympic Equestrian Fund Sweepstake, when he defeated *Prince*, ridden by First Lieutenant John W. Wofford, and the writer's *Captain Kidd*, in the order named.

For the 2nd year in succession, *Captain Kidd*, the writer's game little 15-hand bay gelding, won the Military Jumping Championship of the show, making two perfect performances over the difficult course to defeat the Fort Myer Horse Show Team's clever bay mare, *Miss Kleburne*, ridden by Captain Marion Carson. *Mani Girl*, owned and ridden by Major Charles B. Lyman, of Fort Hamilton, was 3rd. A year ago, *Captain Kidd* won over the outdoor course. This year, however, rain marred the first afternoon, so all the jumps had to be moved to the riding hall during the luncheon recess. 4th place went

to Lieutenant Colonel H. H. Frost's *Jeb Stuart*, ridden by Lieutenant Wofford.

Little John, owned and ridden by Major Charles B. Lyman, proved outstanding in the class for Officers' Chargers, which attracted nine entries. The event was divided into two phases, schooling and jumping. *Little John* proved himself proficient in both phases, also scoring high on conformation. 2nd place went to a nice strong bay, *Tarvia*, exhibited by Lieutenant Wofford. *Tarvia* shows a great deal of promise, both as a charger and over fences, but is still a bit green, having made his show ring debut at Greenwich only three months ago. 3rd was awarded to *Lady Biff*, owned by Major John B. Thompson, of West Point.

Three teams competed over the outdoor course in the Military Team Event, two from West Point, and another from Fort Myer. The West Point 1st team was the winner with Fort Myer 2nd.

Miss *Kleburne*, ridden by Captain Carson, won the first open event of the show, going clean over the four-foot course to defeat Colonel Frost's *Jeb Stuart*, ridden by Lieutenant Wofford, and *Squire*, with Danny Shea in the saddle. There were 34 entries in the event, *Captain Kidd* placing 4th.

The class for jumpers open only to officers and ladies of West Point, was won by First Lieutenant Arthur K. Hammond, riding his bay gelding *Mount Norris*. First Lieutenant Theodore S. Riggs rode *Mad Lew* to place 2nd over Mrs. John B. Thompson on *Cricket*. 4th was First Lieutenant Richard K. McMaster on the veteran jumper *Juliette*.



Captain Frank DeK. Huyler on *Captain Kidd*, twice winner of Military Jumping Championship at West Point.

First Lieutenant Andrew A. Frierson's good chesnut gelding *Ken* turned in a nice round to win the event for Novice Hunters, which opened the two-day program. *Play Toy*, owned and ridden by Joseph A. Hale of Greenwich, was 2nd, with Mr. Harry R. Glavas's *Adare* 3rd and Lieutenant Wofford's *Tarvia*, 4th. Lieutenant Frierson scored again when his hunter *Red Lake* placed 2nd to *Kinprillis* in the Middle and Heavyweight Class. Mrs. John J. Farrell's grey, *Moby Dick*, was 3rd over *Lady Biff*.

Two cadet jumping classes were held during the show. Cadet P. M. Jones, won the first on *Boyd*, with Cadet Strauss 2nd on *Queen's Own*, veteran member of the West Point Horse Show team. In the other cadet event, the winner was *Grizzley*, ridden by Cadet Mock. *Lawton*, ridden by Cadet Gillis, was 2nd. The horsemanship of the cadets is much improved over what it was a number of years ago. In the limited time available for instruction, the present cavalry instructors have done a great deal toward giving the future officers a foundation upon which to build themselves when they finally receive their commissions and go to duty with troops.

From the point of view of the owners of open jumpers, the West Point Horse Show left little to be desired. The courses, designed to really test the ability of the contestants, met with approval from all sides. If, however, West Point wishes to attract the larger hunter stables another year, something will have to be done about re-designing the hunter courses, to make them more natural in appearance. Civilians argue, and rightly, that if one found such fences in the hunting field, another way around would have to be found. A hunter should be bold and jump without hesitation, but, on the other hand, the fences should be of a type commonly found in the hunting field. Mrs. Whitney has some of the cleverest fencers in the game, but they were absolutely at sea over some of the West Point obstacles.

The show, as is customary, was held for the benefit of the West Point Relief Society.

Judges:

Hunters: Lieutenant Colonel Charles L. Scott of Washington, D. C.; Mr. O'Malley Knott of New York City; and Mr. Alfred B. Maclay of Millbrook, N. Y.

Jumpers: Lieutenant Colonel Charles L. Scott; and Mr. O'Malley Knott.

Military Classes: Major Frederick W. Boye of New-ark, N. J.; and Captain Raymond E. S. Williamson of West Point.

The Cavalry School Race Meeting

THE Cavalry School annual race meeting was conducted on May 30th and June 2d this year at the Riverside race track, Fort Riley, Kansas. The results of the five races run on each day of the meeting follow:

May 30, 1935

Weather, clear; course, fast.

THE RIMROCK: For three year olds and upward, government

owned. To be ridden by enlisted men of the United States Army. Catch weights. Entry free. Purse \$35.00 of which \$10.00 to the second and \$5.00 to the third. ¼ mile on the flat. Winner: 13th Cavalry's *Propus*, ch.g.9, by *North Star III-Polyantha*. Trainer: Sgt. Engelhart.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
<i>Propus</i> , ch.g.9	155	1	Sgt. Engelhart	13th Cav.
<i>Abe Tremble</i> , ch.g.8	165		Sgt. Owens	Cav. Sch.
<i>Gray Hill</i> , gr.g.a.	165		Cpl. Moon	Cav. Sch.
<i>Flirty Lou</i> , br.m.a.	155	2	Sgt. Colley	2d Cav.
<i>Time Set</i> , ch.g.9	155	3	Cpl. Costigan	2d Cav.
<i>Wandella</i> , ch.m.9	155		Cpl. Minthorn	2d Cav.
<i>Sultor</i> , ch.g.7	155		Cpl. Lowe	13th Cav.

Won driving; 2 and 3 driving. Time, 25 4/5.
Scratched: *Fliton*, *Hammer*, *Twenty Grand*.

THE GRASSLANDS POINT TO POINT: For four year olds and upward, regularly assigned to members of the Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class and to be ridden by members of that class. Half-breds to carry 155 pounds. Thoroughbreds to carry 165 pounds. Plate or trophy to first and second. About two miles. Winner: Cavalry School's *Talus*, b.g.7, by *Waldemar-Unk*. Trainer: Capt. Burnett.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
<i>Talus</i> , b.g.7	155	1	Sgt. Owens	Cav. Sch.
<i>Chaffinch</i> , ch.m.a.	165		Sgt. Null	Cav. Sch.
<i>Dannela</i> , br.m.7	165		Sgt. Childers	Cav. Sch.
<i>Sharper</i> , b.g.7	155	4	Sgt. Martin	Cav. Sch.
<i>Foralax</i> , b.g.7	155		Cpl. Kelley	Cav. Sch.
<i>Dintate</i> , ch.g.6	165	2	Cpl. Carter	Cav. Sch.
<i>King Kong</i> , b.g.7	155		Cpl. Butler	Cav. Sch.
<i>Square Smith</i> , b.g.7	155	3	Cpl. Mills	Cav. Sch.
<i>Fanchion</i> , ch.m.a.	155		Cpl. Georisch	Cav. Sch.

Dintate and *Talus* riding neck and neck half way around, *Talus* finished driving to win by four lengths. Time: 4:47 1/5.

THE JOE DECEIVE POINT TO POINT: For four year olds and upward. To be ridden by officers of the United States Army or members of a recognized hunt. Half-breds to carry 155 pounds. Thoroughbreds to carry 165 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first and second. About two miles. Winner: The Cavalry School's *Sparker*, b.g.a., by *Ft. McLeod-Florence Campbell*. Trainer: Capt. Burnett.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
<i>Sparker</i> , b.g.a.	165	1	Lt. Carns	Cav. Sch.
<i>Sally Gun</i> , br.m.a.	155	3	Lt. Ellis	Cav. Sch.
<i>Burnt</i> , br.g.a.	165	2	Lt. Croswell	Cav. Sch.
<i>Kanaka</i> , ch.g.7	155		Capt. Febiger	Cav. Sch.
<i>Five Honors</i> , br.m.8	165		Lt. Minniece	Cav. Sch.
<i>Reno Arne</i> , b.g.a.	155		Lt. Waters	Cav. Sch.
<i>Flitten</i> , b.g.7	155		Lt. Moores	Cav. Sch.
<i>Jinwich</i> , ch.g.7	165	4	Lt. Hunter	Cav. Sch.

Sparker leading *Sally Gun* by 2 lengths half way around. *Sparker* won by a length driving. *Burnt* drove hard to pass *Sally Gun* in last furlong. *Kanaka* ran out at last jump. Time 4:28 2/5.

Scratched: *Marie H* and *Brown Parcel*.

THE SMOKY HILL: For three year olds and upward, owned by the government, officers of the United States Army, or members of a recognized hunt. To be ridden by officers of the United States Army or members of a recognized hunt. Half-breds to carry 155 pounds. Thoroughbreds to carry 165 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first and second. ½ mile on the flat. Winner: The 13th Cavalry's *Propus*, ch.g.9, by *North Star III-Polyantha*. Trainer: Sgt. Engelhart.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
<i>Aeronauta</i> , b.m.a.	165	2	Lt. Darling	Cav. Sch.
<i>My Partner</i> , ch.g.a.	165		Lt. Croswell	Cav. Sch.
<i>Bermuda</i> , b.m.a.	155	4	Lt. Rogers	Cav. Sch.
<i>Peggy</i> , ch.m.a.	165		Lt. Ellis	Cav. Sch.
<i>Stella Mae</i> , ch.m.a.	165	3	Lt. Finnegan	Cav. Sch.
<i>Breakers</i> , b.g.a.	165		Lt. Dodge	Cav. Sch.
<i>Propus</i> , ch.g.9	165	1	Lt. Noble	13th Cav.

Propus broke on top and was never headed. Won easily by 4 lengths. *Aeronauta* held place position all the way. Time: 0:53 1/5.

Scratched: *Five Honors*.

THE CAVARY MEMORIAL CUP STEEPLECHASE: For four year olds and upward, owned by the government or by officers of the United States Army. To be ridden by officers of the United States Army stationed at Fort Riley. Half-breds to carry 155 pounds. Thoroughbreds to carry 165 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first and second. About two miles. Winner: The Cavalry School's *Johnny Shore*, ch.g.a., by John R. Clay-Nellie Shore. Trainer: Capt. Burnett.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
Amiss, b.g.a.	155	2	Lt. Waters	Cav. Sch.
Flit, b.g.a.	155	4	Lt. J. Curtis	Cav. Sch.
Lady Kay, ch.m.a.	155		Lt. Porter	Cav. Sch.
Johnny Shore, ch.g.a.	165	1	Capt. Olsen	Cav. Sch.
Argyle, b.g.a.	155		Lt. McClelland	Cav. Sch.
Rolling River, ch.g.7.	165		Lt. Minniece	Cav. Sch.
Reno Duce, ch.g.	155		Lt. Carns	Cav. Sch.
Francis Biddle, b.m.8.	165	3	Lt. Darling	Cav. Sch.

Johnny Shore leading *Amiss* by 3 lengths half way around. *Amiss* challenged unsuccessfully during last half mile. *Johnny Shore* won driving by 1 length. *Rolling River* fell at first jump. *Argyle* lost rider on tenth jump. *Reno Duce*, tiring badly, collapsed at next to last jump. Time: 4:48 2/5.

Scratched: Preston, Brand, Chef, Breakers, Recoil, Jimwich, Adalid.

JUNE 2, 1935

Weather, clear; course, muddy.

THE KAW: For three year olds and upward, government owned. To be ridden by enlisted men of the United States Army. Catch weights. Entry free. Purse \$35.00 of which \$10.00 to the second, and \$5.00 to the third. ½ mile on the flat. Winner: The 13th Cavalry's *Propus*, ch.g.9, by North Star III-Polyantha. Trainer: Sgt. Engelhart.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
Propus, ch.g.9.		1	Sgt. Engelhart	13th Cav.
Abe Tremble, ch.g.8.			Sgt. Owens	Cav. Sch.
Gray Hill, gr.g.a.			Cpl. Moon	Cav. Sch.
Sultor, ch.g.7.			Cpl. Lowe	13th Cav.
Flirty Lou, br.m.a.		4	Sgt. Lerdrup	2d Cav.
Time Set, ch.g.9.		3	Cpl. Costigan	2d Cav.
So What, ch.g.a.			Cpl. Minthorn	2d Cav.
Arab, ch.g.a.			Cpl. Lotshaw	2d Cav.
Spider, ch.g.a.		2	Cpl. Colley	2d Cav.
Elben, ch.g.a.			Sgt. Klotz	2d Cav.
Conviction, ch.g.a.			Pvt. Beets	2d Cav.
Betty, br.m.7.			Cpl. Wells	2d Cav.

Propus broke on top, was never headed, won under wraps by 7 lengths. Time: 0:57 4/5.

Scratched: Fliton, Wandella.

THE ELKIN L. FRANKLIN MEMORIAL STEEPLECHASE: For unplaced horses in any steeplechase or point to point during this meeting, owned by the government or officers of the United States Army. To be ridden by officers of the United States Army or members of a recognized hunt. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first and second. About two miles. Winner: The Cavalry School's *Kanaka*, ch.g.7, by Honolulu Boy-Unk. Trainer: Capt. Burnett.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
Kanaka, ch.g.7.	175	1	Capt. Febiger	Cav. Sch.
Flit, b.g.a.	176½	4	Lt. Curtis	Cav. Sch.
Lady Kay, ch.m.a.	165½	3	Lt. Porter	Cav. Sch.
Argyle, b.g.a.	152½	2	Lt. McClelland	Cav. Sch.

All horses well bunched at half way around. *Kanaka* moved on top during last half mile and was never headed. Time: 4:45 1/5.

Scratched: Flitter, Francis Biddle, Reno Arne.

OLYMPIC POINT TO POINT: For four year olds and upward, regularly assigned to members of the Advanced Equitation Class and to be ridden by members of that class. Other conditions and allowances as prescribed by class instructor. Plate or trophy to first and second. About two miles. Winner: The Cavalry School's *John Doe*, b.g.9, by Deering Joe-Unk. Trainer: Capt. Winchester.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
Silver Fox, gr.g.7.	165		Lt. Darling	Cav. Sch.
Red Wolf, b.g.8.	166	2	Lt. Moores	Cav. Sch.
Dintanita, ch.m.6.	165½		Lt. Hunter	Cav. Sch.
Goldseeker, b.g.8.	197		Lt. Doan	Cav. Sch.
Scamps Boy, br.g.7.	174		Lt. Luebberrmann	Cav. Sch.
John Doe, b.g.9.	166	1	Lt. Acklen	Cav. Sch.
Fitz K., br.g.6.	170	4	Lt. Carns	Cav. Sch.
Dark Dan, br.g.6.	195½	3	Lt. Harkins	Cav. Sch.

John Doe, *Goldseeker*, and *Red Wolf* well bunched half way around. *Goldseeker* made a desperate bid in last quarter but tired and failed to place. *John Doe* won easily. Time: 4:54 1/5.

Scratched: Laddie, Gingee, Dunstan.

THE PAWNEE: For three year olds and upward, owned by the government, officers of the United States Army, or members of a recognized hunt. To be ridden by officers of the United States Army or members of a recognized hunt. Half-breds to carry 155 pounds. Thoroughbreds to carry 165 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first and second. Six furlongs on the flat. Winner: The Cavalry School's *Five Honors*, br.m.8, by High Hand-Irish Flower. Trainer: Capt. Burnett.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
Aeronauta, b.m.a.	165	2	Lt. Darling	Cav. Sch.
My Partner, ch.g.a.	165		Lt. McClelland	Cav. Sch.
Bermuda, b.m.a.	161½	4	Lt. Rogers	Cav. Sch.
Peggy, ch.m.a.	155		Lt. Ellis	Cav. Sch.
Stella Mae, ch.m.a.	176	3	Lt. Finnegan	Cav. Sch.
Five Honors, br.m.8.	165½	1	Lt. Minniece	Cav. Sch.

Five Honors broke on top and was never headed. Won easily by 5 lengths. *Aeronauta* held place position all the way. Time: 1:30 4/5.

Scratched: Breakers, Reno Capers, Propus.

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL HUNT STEEPLECHASE: For four year olds and upward. To be ridden by officers of the United States Army or members of a recognized hunt. Entries to close 5:00 P.M., May 31, 1935. Weights to be announced by 12:00 Noon, June 1, 1935. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first and second. About two and one-half miles. Winner: The Cavalry School's *Sparker*, b.g.a., by Ft. McLeod-Florence Campbell. Trainer: Capt. Burnett.

Starters	Weight	Finish	Rider	Owner
Sparker, b.g.a.	170½	1	Lt. Carns	Cav. Sch.
Burnt, br.g.a.	162	4	Lt. Croswell	Cav. Sch.
Johnny Shore, ch.g.a.	160	3	Capt. Olsen	Cav. Sch.
Amiss, b.g.a.	165		Lt. Waters	Cav. Sch.
Sally Gun, br.m.a.	152½	2	Lt. Ellis	Cav. Sch.
Francis Biddle, b.m.8.	155		Lt. Darling	Cav. Sch.

Sally Gun, on top, followed by *Johnny Shore* and *Sparker* half way around. *Sparker* challenged successfully second from last jump and won by 2 lengths easily. Time: 4:48 4/5.

Fort Ethan Allen Annual Horse Show

HUNTER and jumper competitions held the interest of the spectators at the annual Fort Ethan Allen Horse Show, June 8th and 9th. Of all the twenty-seven classes these divisions were the most popular.

In the hunter classes *Miss Springtime*, Captain Hugh G. Culton's handsome chestnut mare, took first honors. One time Grand Champion saddle mare of the Hawaiian Division, *Miss Springtime* won every event entered, including the ladies' saddle horse class. *High-time*, the 3rd Cavalry's big bay gelding, turned in an excellent performance in the heavyweight class. Lieutenant Colonel Arthur E. Wilbourn, 3d Cavalry, up.

JUMPERS

Of the jumpers, *Firelight*, a clever bay mare owned and trained by Mrs. Willett Foster, Burlington, Vt., and ridden by First Lieutenant Richard B. Evans, was well in front. *Sonny Boy*, the huge chestnut gelding owned by Second Lieutenant Irvin R. Schimmelpfennig, Second Lieutenant Richard Park, Jr., up vied close for top honors here.

One of the outstanding performances of the entire show was made in this division. *High-ball*, the twenty-four year old government mount of Troop A, 3d Cavalry, was entered in three jumping events and won each with a perfect score. Private First Class George E. Bellew, Troop A, rode the mount in the Enlisted Men's Class, and Buzzie Russell, 11 year old son of Captain and Mrs. Randolph Russell, was up in the children's classes.

Rain Sunday morning made hazardous footing, especially for the polo bending class. *Betty Ann*, a novice trained and handled by Lieutenant Colonel Wilbourn, scored an impressive win in this class.

PLATOON TEST

The show opened Saturday morning with the horsemanship phase of the Cavalry Platoon Leadership Test. This event was run over the Ethan Allen Point-to-Point Course, each officer and enlisted man of the competing platoons of Troops A and B, 3d Cavalry, being required to ride individually over the two and one-half mile course of fourteen field obstacles in not less than 12 minutes nor more than 15 minutes.

During the week previous to the show, platoons from Troops A and B, had competed in mounted pistol, rifle, and machine-gun marksmanship. Both had made a thirty-six mile tactical march to include mounted and dismounted combat, defense against air attack and mechanization, and going into and out of bivouac. The test, drawn up by the Squadron Commander was an exacting criterion of men and animals.

The platoons of both troops acquitted themselves most creditably. Troop A's platoon, led by Second Lieutenant Robert W. Fuller, 3d Cavalry, won first place with 71.70 points. The noncommissioned officers of the platoon were Sergeants Carman and Scanzillo and Corporals Riley, Wood, Moore, and Reed. The platoon of Troop B under Second Lieutenant William B. Bunker, 3d Cavalry, finished with a score of 70.82. The umpires and judges were officers of the 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry.

DIFFICULT DRAFT TEST

A new and interesting feature of this year's show was the motor vehicle difficult draft test. A section of four vehicles under a lieutenant was entered by each battery of the recently motorized 7th Field Artillery. The course, about two miles long, included a mud hole, heavy underbrush, short turns, narrow trails, heavy sand and steep grades. The speed maintained over broken terrain and the skill of drivers and crews in surmounting obstacles

was surprising and exciting. Battery D, under Second Lieutenant George C. Duehring made high score.

POINT-TO-POINT RACE

The show culminated Sunday afternoon in the spectacular Ethan Allen Point-to-Point Race. This event was run over a flat course two and one-half miles long. There were fourteen obstacles, including brushes, ramps, and water jumps. Rain had turned the course into a hazardous mire of mud and water.

Five entries got off to a fast start. At the second obstacle, *Pet*, Captain Joseph M. Glasgow, 3d Cavalry, up, was blinded by mud and crashed the jump. Captain Glasgow suffered a wrenched shoulder and bruises which necessitated a week's treatment at the Station Hospital.

The pace slackened only slightly at the midway marker, and *Starlane*, Lieutenant Park up, yielded the lead to *Black Beauty*, Lieutenant Evans up. Near the two-mile mark Second Lieutenant William B. Bunker on *High-time* challenged *Black Beauty's* lead. *Beatrice* under Lieutenant Fuller, came up and passed *Starlane*. The pace quickened and the spectators cheered the thrilling neck and neck duel between *Black Beauty* and *High-time*.

The black mare, smartly handled by Lieutenant Evans, beat off the threat and sprinted across the line a good length ahead of *High-time*. *Beatrice* stumbled the last jump and spilled Lieutenant Fuller. *Starlane* finished third. Time: 6.02.

TROOP A WINS BANNER

The banner for the organization winning the greatest number of points in enlisted men's events was awarded to Troop A, 3d Cavalry. Troop A totaled 42 points against Troop B's 20.

LOCAL INTEREST

The Show afforded an opportunity to witness a pleasing growth of interest in horses and horsemanship in this section of the country. Home of the esteemed Morgan strain, Vermont has not lost its active interest in good horseflesh. A large portion of the subscribers' list was drawn from civilian population, and a good many scoring entries were from privately-owned stables.

The results of the various classes follow:

CLASS 24. CAVALRY PLATOON LEADERSHIP TEST

Won by Troop A, 3d Cavalry, Second Lieutenant Robert W. Fuller, Platoon Commander.

CLASS 8. NOVICE HUNTERS SUITABLE TO BECOME HUNTERS

1st, *Southland King*, ridden by Second Lieutenant William B. Bunker; 2d, *Firelight*, ridden by First Lieutenant Richard B. Evans; 3d, *Sky High*, ridden by Second Lieutenant Richard Park, Jr.

CLASS 1, ROAD HACK

1st, *Tea Maid* (5F67), ridden by Miss Ann Wilbourn; 2d, *Sonny Boy*, ridden by Lieutenant Park; 3d, *Beatrice* (M148), ridden by Miss Elizabeth Wilbourn; 4th, *Irene Colley*, ridden by Miss Sarah Dreihelbies.

CLASS 11. LADIES' OPEN JUMPING

1st, *High-Time* (1A24), ridden by Mrs. Joseph M. Glasgow; 2d, *Post Boy*, ridden by Miss Poole; 3d, *The Ape*, ridden by Miss Carlisle; 4th, *Irene Colley*, ridden by Miss Sarah Dreihelbies.

CLASS 5, HORSES SUITABLE TO BECOME LIGHT OR MIDDLEWEIGHT HUNTERS

1st, *Miss Springtime*, ridden by Captain Hugh G. Culton; 2d, *Peanuts* (8A06), ridden by First Lieutenant Alan L. Fulton; 3d, *Bumpy*, ridden by Captain Glasgow; 4th, *Firelight*, ridden by Lieutenant Evans.

CLASS 4, CHILDREN'S NOVICE CLASS

1st, *Highball* (3Z23), ridden by Buzzie Russell; 2d, *Baby Doll* (3Z09), ridden by Jim Moore; 3d, *Patricia*, ridden by Miss Margaret Forsythe; 4th, *Dick*, ridden by Miss Mary E. Greene.

CLASS 21, ENLISTED MEN'S JUMPING

1st, *Highball* (3Z23), ridden by Pfc. G. E. Bellew, Troop A; 2d, *Lady* (A048), ridden by Sergeant H. Carman, Troop A; 3d, *Poor Boy* (2A46), ridden by Pfc. Tobathko, Troop B; 4th, *Blue Boy* (9F16), ridden by Pfc. Gormley, Troop A.

CLASS 3, LOCAL SADDLE HORSE

1st, *Red*, ridden by Dr. C. A. Ravey; 2d, *Post Boy*, ridden by Miss Howard; 3d, *Firelight*, ridden by Mr. R. St. Jock, Jr.; 4th, *Misty*, ridden by Miss Poole.

CLASS 7, HORSES SUITABLE TO BECOME LADIES' HUNTERS

1st, *Bumpy*, ridden by Mrs. Glasgow; 2d, *Post Boy*, ridden by Miss Poole; 3d, *Beatrice* (M148), ridden by Miss Elizabeth Wilbourn; 4th, *Irene Colley*, ridden by Miss Sarah Dreibelbies.

CLASS 14, JUNIOR JUMPING

1st, *Highball* (3Z23), ridden by Buzzie Russell; 2d, *Bessie*, ridden by Howard Eager; 3d, *Snooks* (7F93), ridden by Herbert Lord; 4th, *Stockings* (6Z49), ridden by Robert Wilbourn.

CLASS 12, TOUCH AND OUT, OFFICERS AND CIVILIANS

1st, *Sonny Boy*, ridden by Lieutenant Park; 2d, *Blue Bell* (M114), ridden by Captain Culton; 3d, *Firelight*, ridden by Lieutenant Evans; 4th, *Maria* (2F28), ridden by Lieutenant Bunker.

CLASS 27, OBSTACLE, ENLISTED MEN

1st, *Tarzan* (3K80), ridden by Corporal Genero, Troop A; 2d, *Lee* (M113), ridden by Corporal Wood, Troop A; 3d, *Poncho* (07A7), ridden by Pfc. Orso, Troop A; 4th, *Pet* (22F4), ridden by Corporal Cartier, Troop A.

CLASS 13, NOVICE JUMPERS, OFFICERS AND CIVILIANS

1st, *The Ape*, ridden by Captain Albert J. Hastings; 2d, *Sky High*, ridden by Lieutenant Park; 3d, *Southland King*, ridden by Lieutenant Bunker; 4th, *Post Boy*, ridden by Lieutenant Evans.

CLASS 18, TROOPER'S MOUNTS

1st, *Tarzan* (0F77), ridden by Sergeant Towne, Troop B; 2d, *Come On* (7A62), ridden by Corporal Wood, Troop A; 3d, *Riley* (M149), ridden by Corporal Riley, Troop A; 4th, *Baboon* (9A84), ridden by Sergeant Silveria, Troop B.

CLASS 19, JUMPING FOR NATIONAL GUARD AND RESERVE OFFICERS

1st, *Kentucky* (0F95), ridden by Captain R. V. Parrott; 2d, *Mike* (0F75), ridden by First Lieutenant Mayo, Inf.-Res.; 3d, *Whiskers*, ridden by First Lieutenant Miller, FIN-Res.; 4th, *Dearie* (4A92), ridden by First Lieutenant Powell, Inf.-Res.

CLASS 16, PROSPECTIVE POLO PONIES

1st, *Betty Ann* (1F8), ridden by Lieutenant Colonel Wilbourn; 2d, *Firelight*, ridden by Captain W. Foster, Q.M.-Res.; 3d, *Misty*, ridden by Dr. C. A. Ravey.

CLASS 17, OFFICER'S CHARGERS

1st, *Springtime*, ridden by Captain Culton; 2d, *Hightime* (1A24), ridden by Lieutenant Colonel Wilbourn; 3d, *Southland King*, ridden by Lieutenant Bunker; 4th, *Peanuts* (8A06), ridden by Lieutenant Fulton.

CLASS 22, NOVICE JUMPERS, ENLISTED MEN

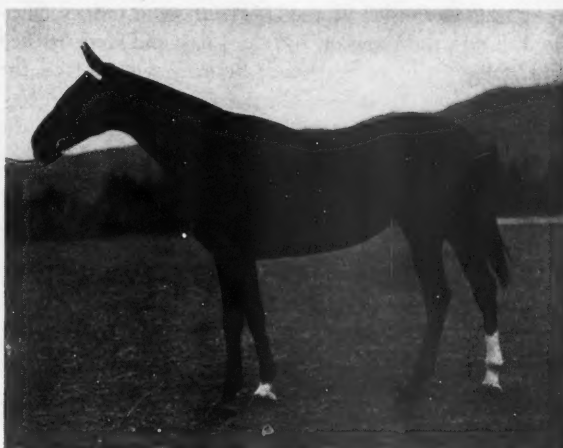
1st, *Tarzan* (0F97), ridden by Sergeant Towne, Troop B; 2d, *Mike* (22F5), ridden by Sergeant Fardy, Troop A; 3d, *Socks* (3K64), ridden by Private Gagne, Troop B; 4th, *Buck* (460L), ridden by Sergeant Blazejevski, Troop A.

CLASS 6, HORSES SUITABLE TO BECOME HEAVYWEIGHT HUNTERS

1st, *Hightime* (1A24), ridden by Lieutenant Colonel Wilbourn; 2d, *The Ape*, ridden by Captain Hastings; 3d, *Alma* (25F5), ridden by Captain Culton; 4th, *Allen*, ridden by Lieutenant Fulton.

CLASS 2, LADIES' SADDLE HORSE

1st, *Springtime*, ridden by Mrs. Culton; 2d, *Beatrice* (M148), ridden by Miss Elizabeth Wilbourn; 3d, *Susette*, ridden by Mrs. W. E. Burr; 4th, *M.B.*, ridden by Miss Edith Carlisle.



Miss Springtime, Captain Hugh G. Culton's handsome mare, winner of several classes at Fort Ethan Allen.

CLASS 10, OPEN JUMPING, OFFICERS AND CIVILIANS

1st, *Firelight*, ridden by Lieutenant Evans; 2d, *Sonny Boy*, ridden by Lieutenant Park; 3d, *Peanuts* (8A06), ridden by Lieutenant Fulton; 4th, *Blue Bell* (M114), ridden by Captain Culton.

CLASS 26, ARTILLERY DRAFT COMPETITION

1st, Battery D, 7th F.A., Lieutenant Duehring.

CLASS 20, BEST TURNED OUT ENLISTED MEN'S HORSE

1st, *Tarzan* (0F77), ridden by Sergeant Towne, Troop B; 2d, *Come On* (7A02), ridden by Corporal Wood, Troop A; 3d, *Ajax* (9A68), ridden by Corporal Zabawa, Troop A; 4th, *Baboon* (9A84), ridden by Sergeant Silveria, Troop B.

CLASS 15, OBSTACLE JUMPING, OFFICERS AND CIVILIANS

1st, *Firelight*, ridden by Lieutenant Evans; 2d, *Sonny Boy*, ridden by Lieutenant Park; 3d, *Maria* (2F28), ridden by Lieutenant Bunker.

CLASS 23, TOUCH AND OUT, ENLISTED MEN

1st, *Come On* (7A02), ridden by Corporal Wood, Troop A; 2d, *Highball* (3Z23), ridden by Pfc. Bellew, Troop A; 3d, *Rock* (K030), ridden by Private Guevin, Troop A; 4th, *Bud* (9F19), ridden by Private Meunier, Troop B.

CLASS 25, ETHAN ALLEN POINT-TO-POINT RACE

1st, *Black Beauty* (7F80), ridden by Lieutenant Evans; 2d, *Hightime* (1A24), ridden by Lieutenant Bunker; 3d, *Starlane*, ridden by Lieutenant Park.

1 1 1

Annual Hunter Trials and Horse Show at Presidio of Monterey

THE Presidio of Monterey Annual Hunter Trials and Horse Show were held May 24th, 25th, and 26th.

Two days of the show were devoted to hunter trials; the first day for green hunters, with about twenty-five entries; the second day for qualified hunters with some twenty odd entries. Hunters were brought from almost every equestrian center in California. There are many large breeding establishments in this State and a more likely group of thoroughbred hunters could scarcely be found. The third day of the meeting was devoted to a hunter and polo pony show. The classes were quite large, there being about 200 civilian entries together with some fifty from Presidio. The hunter trials were judged by Mr. Charles E. Perkins of Santa Barbara, California; Major Count Geo. de Roaldes of Los Angeles, and Col-

onel Phil Corbusier, Retired. These same judges officiated during the show on the third day and were assisted by Major Delmore S. Wood, Retired, who judged the polo classes.

Following are the results of the events during the three days:

GREEN HUNTER TRIALS

SCHOOLING PHASE. 1st, *Pat*, ridden by Captain Harry C. Mewshaw, 11th Cavalry; 2d, *Del Borgia*, ridden by Dick Collins; 3d, *My Gold*, ridden by A. Foley; 4th, *Captain Kidd*, ridden by First Lieutenant Robert G. Lowe, 11th Cavalry.

CROSS COUNTRY PHASE. 1st, *Bull Dog*, ridden by Lieutenant Lowe; 2d, *Pony Boy*, ridden by Second Lieutenant Charles E. Leydecker, 11th Cavalry; 3d, *Cyrano*, ridden by First Lieutenant Paul G. Kendall, 11th Cavalry; 4th, *Del Nira*, ridden by Ted Schaps.

JUMPING PHASE. 1st, *So High*, ridden by A. Sysin; 2d, *Cyrano*, ridden by Lieutenant Kendall; 3d, *Bull Dog*, ridden by Lieutenant Lowe; 4th, *Ric Ferine*, ridden by Egon Merz.

QUALIFIED HUNTER TRIALS

(Limited to Winners in previous Hunter Trials)

SCHOOLING PHASE. 1st, *Del Brutus*, ridden by Dick Collins; 2d, *Sleepy*, ridden by Lieutenant Kendall; 3d, *Kelly*, ridden by Captain Mewshaw; 4th, *Major Skagg*, ridden by Lieutenant Lowe.

CROSS COUNTRY PHASE. 1st, *Sleepy*, ridden by Lieutenant Kendall; 2d, *Reno*, ridden by Second Lieutenant Donald O. Vars, 11th Cavalry; 4th, *Kelly*, ridden by Captain Mewshaw.

JUMPING PHASE. 1st, *Beau Magic*, ridden by R. Foley; 2d, *Sleepy*, ridden by Lieutenant Kendall; 3d, *Silver*, ridden by Lieutenant Lowe; 4th, *Major Skagg*, ridden by Lieutenant Lowe.

Champion, *Sleepy*, ridden by Lieutenant Kendall; reserve champion, *Silver*, ridden by Lieutenant Lowe; 3d, *Major Skagg*, ridden by Lieutenant Lowe; 4th, *Captain Kidd*, ridden by Captain Mewshaw.

SUNDAY'S HUNTER AND POLO PONY SHOW

The results of the hunter and polo pony show follow:

NOVICE HUNTERS CLASS. 1st, *Del Nira*, ridden by Phil Sheridan and owned by Mrs. Brown; 2d, *Goldie*, ridden by Mary Hayne, owner, San Carlos Stables; 3d, *Cyrano*, ridden by Lieutenant Kendall, owned by Captain John R. Thornton, 11th Cavalry; 4th, *Burgundy*, ridden by Charles Rowley, owner, California Rodeo Riding Club.

GREEN HUNTERS CLASS. 1st, *Del Brutus*, ridden by Dick Collins, owner, Mrs. Victor McLaglen; 2d, *Del Borgia*, ridden by Dick Collins, owner, S. C. Fertig; 3d, *Del Nira*, ridden by Ted Schaps, owner, Mrs. Brown; 4th, *So High*, ridden by June Bradford, owner, Miss L. Proud.

LIGHTWEIGHT POLO PONTES. 1st, *Walter Message*, ridden and owned by Dick Collins; 2d, *Shop Girl*, ridden by Mary J. Sterling, owner, George Pope, Jr.; 3d, *Flash*, ridden by Dick Collins, owner, Douglas Schools; 4th, *Cornell*, ridden by Jim Carpenter, owner, E. Martin.

HUNTER HACKS. 1st, *Beau Magic*, ridden by A. Foley, owner, S. D. Calhoun; 2d, *Beau Ideal*, owned and ridden by Dick Collins; 3d, *Del Borgia*, ridden by Mary Haynes, owner, S. C. Fertig; 4th, *Ric Ferine*, ridden by Egon Merz, owner, Marion P. Gross.

OPEN JUMPING. 1st, *Big Ben*, ridden by Lieutenant Howard M. Batson, 76th Field Artillery, owned by Army; 2d, *Lady*, ridden by Lieutenant Charles E. Wheatley, 11th Cavalry, owned by Army; 3d, *Jimmy*, ridden by Captain Harry C. Mewshaw, 11th Cavalry, owned by Army; 4th, *So High*, ridden by A. Sysin, owner, Miss L. Proud.

LADIES' HUNTERS. 1st, *So High*, ridden by June Bradford, owner, Miss L. Proud; 2d, *Betty*, ridden by Mrs. Charles E. Wheatley, owned by Army; 3d, *Scotty*, ridden by Mrs. J. S. Gripe, owner, unknown; 4th, *Big Ben*, ridden by Mrs. P. A. Ridge, owned by Army.

MODEL HUNTERS. 1st, *My Gold*, ridden by A. Foley, owner, Mrs. F. H. Laue; 2d, *Miss McGunnigle*, ridden by Phil Sheridan, owner, Alisal ranch; 3d, *Del Brutus*, ridden by Dick Collins, owner, Mrs. Victor McLaglen; 4th, *Ric Ferine*, ridden by Egon Merz, owner, Marion P. Gross.

POLO PONY CHAMPIONSHIP. 1st, *Walter's Message*, ridden and owned by Dick Collins; 2d, *Shop Girl*, ridden by Mary J. Sterling, owner, George Pope, Jr.

CHAMPION HUNTERS. 1st, *Beau Magic*, ridden by A. Foley, owner, S. D. Calhoun; 2d, *Pony Boy*, ridden by Lieutenant

Charles E. Leydecker, 11th Cavalry, owner, Army; 3d, *Del Nira*, ridden by Ted Schaps, owner, Mrs. Brown; 4th, *Ric Ferine*, ridden by Egon Merz, owner, Marion P. Gross.

CIVILIAN-MILITARY TEAM GOLD-CUP COMPETITION. Won by Captain Harry C. Mewshaw, 11th Cavalry; First Lieutenant Paul G. Kendall, 11th Cavalry; First Lieutenant Robert G. Lowe, 11th Cavalry.

ENLISTED MEN'S EQUESTRIAN EVENTS

The Hunter Trials and Hunter and Polo Pony Show were restricted to civilian entries and entries of the officers of the post on May 24th, 25th, and 26th. However, a gymkhana composed of equestrian events was held at the Del Monte Polo Field on June 15th, for the enlisted men of the Post.

The post equestrian championship was presented to that organization making the highest score based on places won during the day in all events. The following are the classes and the results of the day's show:

SCHOOLING PHASE HUNTER TRIALS. 1st, First Sergeant Thomas Sapash, Troop A, riding *Pat*; 2d, Sergeant Samuel R. Seale, Troop E, riding *Dopey Red*; 3d, Sergeant Charles G. Neal, Headquarters Troop, riding *Major Skagg*; 4th, Sergeant Arthur G. Gayne, Troop F, riding *Jingles*.

FINALS, HUNTER TRIALS. 1st, Sergeant Samuel R. Seale, Troop E, riding *Dopey Red*; 2d, First Sergeant Thomas Sapash, Troop A, riding *Captain Kidd*; 3d, Sergeant Joseph Graham, Troop A, riding *Kelly*; 4th, Sergeant David Roberts, Troop B, riding *Mary Ann*.

CLASS III. Three feet, six inches, jumping. 1st, Corporal George F. Siegle, Machine-Gun Troop, riding *Snort*; 2d, Private Frick, Troop E, riding *Fred*; 3d, Private Floyd W. Dinkle, Troop A, riding *Skyrocket*; 4th, Private Claude V. Russell, Troop F, riding *Murphy*.

CLASS V. Three feet, nine inches, jumping. 1st, Sergeant Frank P. Morehead, Troop E, riding *Buddy*; 2d, Corporal William J. Filburn, Machine Gun Troop, riding *JP*; 3d, Pfc. Rollan G. Hanna, Troop A, riding *Masquerade*; 4th, Private Arthur G. Gayne, Troop F, riding *Big Four*.

CLASS VII. Pair Jumping. 1st, Corporal John R. Slovak and Private Charles R. Renfro, Troop B, riding *Rainbow Rose* and *Reno*; 2d, Pfc. Vernon W. Kuska and Pfc. John C. Routhier, Troop E, riding *Baldy* and *Bear Cat*; 3d, Corporal George B. England and Private Joseph J. Blunk, Troop F, riding *Rock* and *Little Duke*; 4th, Corporal John R. Fowler and Corporal Joseph P. Mickiewicz, Troop A, riding *Rusty* and *Collean*.

CLASS IX. Artillery Section Race. 1st, Headquarters Battery and Combat Train, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery; 2d, Battery D, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery; 3d, Battery E, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery.

CLASS XI. Bareback Jumping, 4 feet. 1st, Private Floyd Welden, Troop B, riding *Betty*; 2d, Pfc. John B. Kelly, Headquarters Troop, riding *Midnight*; 3d, Pfc. James Haste, Troop F, riding *Cinque*; 4th, Corporal Raymond O'Connor, Battery D, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery, riding *Pay Day*.

CROSS COUNTRY PHASE HUNTER TRIALS. 1st, Corporal Ernest A. Fink, Machine Gun Troop, riding *Penny*; 2d, Sergeant Samuel Seale, Troop E, riding *Dopey Red*; 3d, Sergeant Joseph Graham, Troop A, riding *Kelly*; 4th, Sergeant David Roberts, Troop B, riding *Mary Ann*.

CLASS II. Polo Bending. 1st, Sergeant Joseph Graham, Troop A; 2d, Private Gilbert R. Scruggs, Battery E, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery; 3d, Private Francis G. Miehl, Troop B.

CLASS IV. Musical Chairs. 1st, Private Harry E. Sherman, Battery D, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery, riding *Jimmy*; 2d, Private Maymoud Klimper, Troop B, riding *Clock*; 3d, Private Louis E. Mazick, Battery D, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery, riding *Monkey*.

CLASS VI. Rescue Race. 1st, Corporal John Fowler and Private Clarence E. Shipman, Troop A; 2d, Corporal P. E. Bickers and Private R. F. Morgan, Troop E; 3d, Private Floyd Weldon and Private Raymond Klimper, Troop B; 4th, Private Joseph Blunk and Private Andrew J. Hayden, Troop F.

CLASS X. Four feet, three inches, jumping. 1st, Corporal William J. Filburn, Machine Gun Troop, riding *Pony Boy*; 2d, Private Clarence E. Shipman, Troop A, riding *Jimmy*; 3d, Corporal Edw. G. Blackmore, Troop B, riding *Sleepy*; 4th, Sergeant Mike Mahar, Battery D, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery, riding *Big Ben*.

CLASS XII. Roman Race. 1st, Sergeant Hugh S. Sypolt, Machine Gun Troop; 2d, Corporal John Slovak, Troop B; 3d, Pfc. Walter Barnes, Headquarters Troop; 4th, Private Arthur J. Anderson, Troop A.

Final organization standing:

1st,	Troop E, 11th Cavalry.....	35 points
2d,	Troop A, 11th Cavalry.....	34 points
3d,	Troop B, 11th Cavalry.....	24 points
3d,	Machine-Gun Troop, 11th Cav.....	24 points
4th,	Troop F, 11th Cavalry.....	18 points
4th,	Battery D, 76th Field Artillery.....	18 points
5th,	Headquarters Troop, 11th Cav.....	12 points
6th,	Battery E, 76th Field Artillery.....	8 points
7th,	Headquarters Battery, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery.....	5 points

1 1 1

The Military Classes at the Tuxedo Horse Show

By Captain Frank DeK. Huyler, Cavalry-Reserve

AS an evidence of the warm friendship existing between the members of the Tuxedo Park colony, and the officers and ladies of West Point, Mrs. David Wagstaff, president of the Tuxedo Horse Show, always includes a number of military events in the annual Tuxedo exhibition, which this year followed immediately after the West Point Show. Officers from West Point and the visiting Fort Myer Team shipped directly to Tuxedo after the West Point exhibition closed, having a day's rest before competition began.

The most noteworthy achievement of the Army at Tuxedo, was the winning of the reserve championship in the jumper division by Captain James T. Duke, of Fort Myer, riding the good little bay jumper, *Sandy*. Competing against the cream of the civilian horses, *Sandy* forced Mrs. Julius Bliss's *Grey Flight* to jump off, only yielding by the margin of a tick, while the big grey again went clean.

Fort Myer took first honors in the Military Jumping Class, when *Miss Kleburne*, who had been one of the stars of the West Point show, again gave Captain Marion Carson a perfect ride to defeat her own teammate, *Eyes Delight*, ably ridden by First Lieutenant Joseph Ganahl. 3d and 4th also went to Fort Myer horses, *Al Capone* and *Tom Lewis* respectively. That Fort Myer had an upper hand when it came to jumping is evidenced by the fact that members of that team also took all four places in the class for Military Jumpers open to horses that have not won more than six blue ribbons. This event was won by Captain Duke on *Sandy*, *Miss Kleburne* took 2d, while *Eyes Delight* and *Al Capone* accounted for the other two ribbons.

West Point came to the fore in the event for Officers' Chargers, First Lieutenant John W. Wofford winning the blue on *Tarvia*. 2d went to *Eyes Delight*, 3d to Captain Duke's bay gelding, *Old Gold*, while 4th was awarded to First Lieutenant Clarence C. Clendenen, riding his bay gelding, *Pan Castle*.

Two cadet jumping classes were held the first day, Mrs. David Wagstaff tendering a luncheon in honor of the visiting cadets between sessions.

The morning class was won by Cadet Foreman, riding the veteran *Queen's Own*, which defeated Cadet Neiger on *Juliette*. Cadet Gillis was 3d on *Lawton*, while the white ribbon went to Cadet Alger, riding *Baker*.

The afternoon saw the blue ribbon awarded to *Arnold*, ridden by Cadet Glass, who displaced Cadet P. M. Jones with *Boyd*. *Baker* placed 3d this time with Cadet Loeb in the saddle, 4th going to *Queen's Own*, ridden this time by Cadet Strauss.

On Saturday, Mrs. Wagstaff gave her annual luncheon for the exhibitors, judges and their friends. The personnel of the West Point and Fort Myer teams attended *en masse*.

Military events at Tuxedo were judged by Colonel S. C. Reynolds, of Washington.

1 1 1

305th Cavalry Equestrian Games

By Sergeant John C. Fairchild, 305th Cavalry

ON Saturday, June 15th, the 305th Cavalry, Philadelphia, staged a series of Equestrian Games at Newton Square. It was the first time anything of this sort had ever been attempted in this section of the country. A more perfect day, or a more perfect setting could not have welcomed its inauguration. It was the first of what promises to be an annual affair of great interest. In fact, it was met with such acclaim, that it is possible that the 305th will make it a semi-annual affair.

The games were held on a large and beautiful estate, that of Mr. Alfred Biddle, about one and one-half miles north of Newton Square, Pa. The games were open to all comers, and attracted an impressive array of riders, the majority of whom were civilians. Famous riders and famous horses tried their skill over the unusual courses. Among the spectators were many more famed horsemen and horsewomen, most of whom have stated a definite intention of entering the games this fall. The various courses were indicated by red and white flags, while the regimental colors flew before the headquarters tent. Altogether, it was an impressive sight, and colorful to a high degree. The inside courses were set up in a natural amphitheatre, while the outside courses extended over natural hunting country—over fields and through woods. Jumps were everywhere, and there were all kinds—hogbacks—worms—post and rail—brush jumps—ditch jumps—fences—walls—pickets and others. The minimum height for all jumps was three feet, six inches, and the maximum, as it happened, was four feet, nine inches. Everything went off perfectly, and there were no accidents to mar the day. There were a number of spills, however, but they were mostly due to the horses not being accustomed to the type of courses they were required to negotiate. Among the judges, who were both civilian and Army, were Captain Marion Carson, of Fort Myer, and Captain A. M. Marshall.

Major Norman E. Fiske, Unit Instructor of the 305th Cavalry, was responsible for the whole affair. It was through his inspiration that the regiment organized the Equestrian Games. He mapped out the courses, and generally ran the show, not to mention winning the fourth class with a beautiful exhibition of horsemanship.

The first class of the day was an Equestrian Competition, in which the horses were shown over a course of about fifteen varied obstacles, and the distance of which was about 800 yards. All the jumps were about three feet, six inches, high.

The second class was a Hunter Trial. It was run over a one and one-half mile course of natural hunting country. This was very interesting, as the riders had to negotiate about twenty typical obstacles. There were gates to be opened, embankments to climb and descend, in-and-out jumps—and finally an uphill jump into an orchard, which required great skill on the part of the rider to prevent landing in the middle of an apple tree.

The third class was probably the most interesting of the day. It was an Equestrian Competition, or *Gare de Puissance*. The horses were shown over a course of five obstacles in a straight line, spaced 33 feet apart and three and one-half feet high. The horses that completed the course successfully were shown again, with the obstacles raised. Before the class was over, all but four of the fifteen horses entered were eliminated. The last four horses had to jump, first a three-foot, nine-inch jump, then two four-foot, three-inch jumps, and finally two four-foot, nine-inch jumps. It is interesting to note that a juvenile rider won second place in this class.

The fourth, and last class was an Equestrian Competition in which the horses were shown over a 1,000-yard course including about eighteen obstacles not exceeding four and one-half feet in height. This was very exciting, as the time it took to complete the course counted in the final scoring. As a result, the riders rode hard and fast, giving the crowd a thrill that brought cheers more than once. It was in this class that Major Fiske and his famous *Brian Boru* made such an excellent performance. He made the course in record time, and without a single fault, winning the class. The first, third, and fourth classes were run off under the rules of the *Federation Equestre Internationale*.

November 9th of this year has been set for the next 35th Cavalry Equestrian Games. This time there will be eight classes. In addition to the four listed above, there will be a juvenile class, a professional class, a hunt team class, and a strictly military class. Many entries have already been received, including some well known hunt teams. Official entry blanks and invitations will be sent out in September, and it is expected that the number accepting will far exceed those of the first Equestrian Games put on by the 35th.

The summary follows:

CLASS 1. 1st, *Rosie*, owned by Miriam Kahney and ridden by Bert Lambert; 2d, *Sky Haven*, owned and ridden by Eleanor Thorn; 3d, *Waterway*, owned and ridden by J. J. Pyle.

CLASS 2. 1st, *Rosie*, owned by Miriam Kahney and ridden by Bert Lambert; 2nd, *Clay Pigeon*, owned and ridden by B. A. Manger; 3d, *Golden Boy*, owned and ridden by John Simmons.

CLASS 3. 1st, *Golden Boy*, owned and ridden by John Simmons; 2d, *Pat*, owned by John Jacobs and ridden by Jackie Jacobs; 3d, *Goin Up*, owned and ridden by Betty Thorn.

CLASS 4. 1st, *Brian Boru*, owned and ridden by Major Norman E. Fiske; 2d, *Clay Pigeon*, owned and ridden by B. A. Manger; 3d, *Golden Boy*, owned and ridden by John Simmons.

Polo in the Regiments

5th Cavalry

The polo ponies are now in pasture after concluding the season which saw us send two teams to the Second Division Invitation Tournament at San Antonio, Texas, which was won by the Second Division, the 5th Cavalry winning the consolation. From this tournament we sent a team to Piedras Negras where we played General Jesus J. Quinones' strong Mexican four. This was the first polo game ever played in Piedras Negras and was well staged. Here we took the short end of a 9 to 7 score.

We plan to ship two polo teams and a horse show team to Fort Bliss this coming October to participate in the annual 1st Cavalry Division Polo Tournament and Horse Show. We hope to successfully defend our championship won in the senior tournament last fall and put a strong junior team in the field. As we have not sent a horse show team to this show for some years we have no yard stick to measure by.

6th Cavalry

Polo is popular here and on holidays there is a large attendance from the nearby city of Chattanooga. Recently games have been played with the "Oklahoma Cowboys" and with teams from the Louisiana and Georgia National Guard.

8th Cavalry

On June 1st the 8th Cavalry senior polo team defeated the 7th Cavalry Team in a hard-fought game 6-3. This was the final and deciding game and placed the 8th Cavalry as winner of the league. Individual cups were presented by Brigadier General Hamilton S. Hawkins to members of the team which lined up as follows:

No. 1, Second Lieutenant John R. Pugh; No. 2, Major Ernest N. Harmon; No. 3, Captain Vaughan M. Cannon; Back, Captain Thomas Q. Donaldson, Jr.; Substitute, Second Lieutenant Frank H. Britton.

In the Junior Polo League, the 8th Cavalry was also well represented by two equally strong teams, and, while it did not place first, it finished next to the leaders. The improvement in hitting and team work among players in this division had been very noticeable. The following members composed the two teams:

No. 1, Second Lieutenant Frank H. Britton; No. 2, First Lieutenant Raymond M. Barton; No. 3, Major John W. McDonald; Back, Captain Holmes G. Paullin.

No. 1, Second Lieutenant Philip H. Bethune; No. 2, First Lieutenant Augustine D. Dugan; No. 3, Second Lieutenant James H. Polk; Back, Second Lieutenant Jesse M. Hawkins.

On the afternoon of June 30th, the Class of 1934 Polo teams from the 7th and 8th Cavalry played a challenge game on the grass field. The 8th Cavalry team won 7-4, and it was very gratifying to observe the improvement in the play of these officers after only one year's playing.

The line-up was as follows:

No. 1, Second Lieutenant Theodore F. Hurt; No. 2, Second Lieutenant Joseph A. Cleary; No. 3, Second Lieutenant Paul E. Johnson; Back, Second Lieutenant James W. Snee.

An addition to the polo talent on the post is Cadet Harry Wilson, who is spending his furlough from West Point with his parents Lieutenant Colonel and Mrs. Arthur H. Wilson. Cadet Wilson has been practicing and playing with the 8th Cavalry, and, teamed with his father, makes a combination that is hard to beat.

13th Cavalry

The 13th Cavalry polo team, composed of First Lieutenants Charles H. Noble, John H. Claybrook, Jr., Zachary W. Moores, and John P. Willey, and Second Lieutenant Brainard S. Cook played a series of games with the Wichita Polo Club at Wichita. Due to the range activities, the playing members of the team were forced to drive to Wichita prior to each game and return to Fort Riley in the evening. The results of the games were:

- 1st Game: 13th Cavalry, 8; Wichita Polo Club, 4.
- 2d Game: 13th Cavalry, 5; Wichita Polo Club, 6.
- 3d Game: 13th Cavalry, 6; Wichita Polo Club, 5.

14th Cavalry

Polo continues to be actively pursued at Fort Des Moines, notwithstanding the absence of the artillery. Captain Devine is in charge and promises to have a fast team of cavalry players by fall, although Captain Wilkie C. Burt, lately transferred to the Remount Service, Q.M. C., with station at Lexington, Ky., will be much missed next season. A crack team from Minneapolis bringing some splendid mounts, including one pony acquired from the string of Louis Lacey, of the Argentine, played two games here in May, winning one and losing the other, each by close scores. These exhibitions, which were of exceptional interest, proved the mettle of the 14th Cavalry poloists.

26th Cavalry

Commencing in November, practice games were held twice a week with the 24th Field Artillery and between teams of the cavalry until the season closed the latter part of May. Four high goal and four low goal tournaments were played, one-half at Stotsenburg and the other half at Manila.

The Cavalry four on different occasions proved a stumbling block for the strong Elizalde brothers' team of the Manila Polo Club and the sixteen-goal Department Headquarters team. Strengthened by the arrival of Captain Marcus E. Jones and First Lieutenant Cary B. Hutchinson as forwards, Major Julian W. Cunningham and First Lieutenant Henry I. Hodes in the backfield completed a well-balanced team.

Players who turned out for polo and took part in the tournaments included Captains Charles A. Horger and Joe C. Rogers, First Lieutenants Charles H. Valentine, Woodbury Burgess, Basil L. Riggs, Charles V. Bromley, Jr., and Lawrence R. Dewey. First Lieutenants John L. Ryan, Jr., Chas. A. Sheldon, and William P. Withers arrived a little late to get in shape before the season closed, but will be heard from in the fall.

In May, on the beautiful Forbes Field of the Manila Polo Club, a cavalry hard riding team made a bid for the championship of the Far Eastern Circuit. Hutchinson, Jones, Cunningham, and Hodes turned back the powerful Department Headquarters team of First Lieutenant Jean D. Scott, Infantry, Major Thomas W. Hastey, Air Corps, Captain Morton McD. Jones, Cavalry, and Major Charles H. Gerhardt, Cavalry, in the semi-finals to the tune of 9-5. The cavalry was awarded a 4-goal handicap. In the finals, the Manila Polo Club downed the Stotsenburg four by one point, the score being 8-7.

The Junior team playing in the five-goal tournament at the same time and composed of Dewey, Jones, Cunningham, and Hodes experienced little difficulty in pocketing the Day trophy by defeating a junior Manila Polo Club team composed of Count Churruca, Bill Savale, Chick Parsons, and Mike Elizalde by a score of 6-4.

Polo Tournaments Calendar

July 1-September 15—Greenbrier Polo Club, White Sulphur Springs, W. Va.
 July 10-September 15—Santa Barbara, Cal.
 July 14-21—Junior Championship, Burnt Mills Polo Club, Bedminster, N. J.
 July 15-29—Rumson, N. J.
 July 28-August 4—Monmouth Country Club, Eatontown, N. J.
 August 11-19—Broadmoor, Colorado Springs, Colo.
 August 14-September 14—Oak Brook, Hinsdale, Ill. (Near Chicago.)

August 19-25—Miami Valley, Dayton, Ohio.
 August 24-September 14—Hunting Valley, Chagrin Falls, Ohio.
 September—Open Championship of the United States, Meadow Brook Club, Westbury, L. I., N. Y.
 September—Monty Waterbury Cup Tournament, Meadow Brook Club, Westbury, L. I., N. Y.
 September—Twin Cities, Minneapolis, Minn.
 September 1-15—Philadelphia Country Club, Pa.
 September 13-29—Wichita Polo Club, Wichita, Kansas.
 October 14—El Ranchito, Fort Worth, Texas.

THE FOREIGN MILITARY PRESS

REVIEWED BY MAJOR ALEXANDER L. P. JOHNSON, INFANTRY

SANTO DOMINGO — *Revista Militar* — January-February, 1935.

THE JAPANESE SOLDIER. By Commander Yaben.

The author quotes some interesting precepts of training of the Japanese infantryman:

"The Japanese foot soldier must be able to march, shoot and use his bayonet."

"The Japanese infantryman is taught from the very outset that the bayonet is the peculiar weapon of the doughboy, and that only by the use of this weapon will he be able to gain ground. He must remember, that the ultimate decision in battle must be sought in the attack, and that the bayonet is a decisive factor in each assault."

"The spirit of the Japanese Army is the spirit of the offensive. The enemy's abdomen should be the first objective of the bayonet. It is the most vulnerable spot, the one most easily penetrated by the bayonet. The soldier, therefore, does well to take his enemy on a run giving the war cry in order to unnerve his adversary, then drive home the bayonet with full force."

"Generally the first assault will prove successful. If not, attack again lunging against one side of the adversary or the other without wasting time on fencing. The man who assaults promptly, firmly and rapidly will be the victor in the bayonet combat."

"Since time immemorial the cold steel has been the weapon of the Japanese soldier. With it, and only with it has he preserved our country, and recorded his name as a glorious warrior."

"No human engine will ever be invented which will be able to resist the bayonet driven intelligently and valiantly by human mind and the human arm."

FRANCE—*Revue Militaire Française*—February, 1935.

A REAL SOLDIER: VON LETTOW VORBECK. By Colonel Charbonneau.

Discussing the Memoirs of Colonel von Lettow-Vorbeck, defender of German East Africa during the World War, the author pays homage to this distinguished soldier whose unique and resourceful conduct of the campaign in the heart of tropical Africa excited the admiration of friend and foe. With an army, whose strength never exceeded 3,000 Europeans and 11,300 natives, completely cut off from the homeland and all bases of supply, Colonel von Lettow-Vorbeck faced for four years 200,000 British, Belgians, and Portuguese troops in sub-equatorial Africa.

Living off the land, replenishing his supplies, arms and ammunitions by captures from the enemy, this brave commander refused to lay down his arms until ordered to

do so by the Berlin authorities after the signing of the armistice. At that moment Colonel von Lettow-Vorbeck's command consisted of 20 officers, 120 European troops and 1,200 natives. He had one cannon with forty rounds of ammunition, 37 machine guns, light and heavy, about 1,000 rifles and 200,000 rounds of rifle ammunition. Although the treaty of Berlin of 1878, the author notes, conferred upon Lettow-Vorbeck the right to adopt a course of strict neutrality for the duration of the war, he chose active belligerency in order to compel the enemy to maintain in Africa large contingents of troops which otherwise might have been diverted to the European theatre of war.

The author quotes numerous passages from Lettow-Vorbeck's Memoirs outlining the progress of the campaign, the problems and difficulties, the hardships and privations encountered and endured by this gallant band of defenders, to show the high state of morale, the fine sense of humor, and the unflagging optimism which endured to the end. The author refers with special emphasis to Colonel von Lettow-Vorbeck's tribute to the valor of native troops. A young English officer, Lieutenant Barrett, who fought with the British in that campaign and was captured by the Askaris, referred to them as "gentlemen." The author believes that this tribute to native troops is the finest vindication of the colonial troops of France.

The author states that, upon reading von Lettow-Vorbeck's Memoirs, he discovered not only a military leader of great merit, but a man of courage. Some years ago the British rendered public homage to this gallant foe when he appeared on the streets of London at the side of General Smuts, commander-in-chief of the Allied forces in East Africa, to whom von Lettow-Vorbeck surrendered in 1918; and he adds, the French Army will honor itself when it salutes this gallant soldier who in the most critical situation preserved his faith in the Fatherland.

GERMANY—*Deutsche Luftwacht*—March, 1935.

AIR ARMAMENTS AT THE CLOSE OF 1934.

a. Japan. The Japanese Army Air force consists of eleven air regiments normally of six companies each, although several regiments do not have that number at this time. The Japanese naval air force comprises 21 squadrons. It is planned to increase their number to 29 by 1937, and to 39 by 1938. The combined air force has a total personnel of 22,000 with 2,050 airplanes of all types. The navy has four airplane carriers and two tenders. Two additional carriers are now under construction. All matériel is Japanese production including some foreign models built in Japan by special license. Airplane

plants located at Mitsubishi, Makajima, Kawasaki, Kawaniski, Wanatabe, and Ishikhamajima.

Japan has three schools for military and two for naval aviation. The combined budget for military-naval aviation for 1934-1935 amounted to approximately 78 million dollars.

The Japanese antiaircraft defense consists of one regiment of four battalions, and a large number of fixed AA defense guns.

b. Soviet Russia. Although the effective strength of personnel and available matériel is unknown, Soviet Russia's military aviation is reported to consist approximately of:

18 air brigades, with 48 groups and 58 independent squadrons;

4 naval air brigades, with 19 groups and 18 independent squadrons;

Non-brigaded units, 5 groups and 7 squadrons;

1 wing, 5 groups;

Total: 77 groups and 83 squadrons.

Approximately 35 per cent of the total (20 groups and 24 squadrons) is pursuit aviation; 34 per cent (31 groups and 2 squadrons) represents bombers; 27 per cent (22 groups and 56 squadrons) is made up of observation planes and 4 per cent (4 groups and 1 squadron) of attack aviation. It is estimated that Soviet Russia has a total of 4,325 airplanes, and of these about 3,250 planes are of the first line.

The smallest tactical unit is the flight (svyeno) consisting of three planes. Three flights constitute an independent or separate squadron. The organic squadron of the group (eskadrilya) consists of a variable number of planes: ten single-seater pursuit planes, or seven two-seater attack planes, six observation planes or 4 bombers. Three squadrons constitute a group which includes one additional command plane.

The Air Brigade consist of two or more groups. In case of war air brigades or groups are to be assembled in larger tactical units (Aviatsionnye Gruppi — A.G.). These may be placed under the direct control of army headquarters or they may be attached to divisions.

The Soviet air force is definitely organized as an offensive arm with special emphasis on bombers, pursuit, and attack planes. The ANT6 (TB3) is the standard type bomber. Its four motors generate approximately 3,000 h.p. Armament consists of four machine guns providing all around protection. One of these bombers recently covered the distance Vienna-Moscow (2,000 km.) in a non-stop flight at an average speed of 210 km.p.h. During the 1934 May-day parade 131 planes of this type flew over Red Square in Moscow. The bimotored bomber ANT4 (TB1) covered 3,400 km. in a non-stop flight. Some of these bombers were experimentally armed with the 2 cm. Oerlikon machine cannon. Equipped with pontoons, this type bomber is also used by the Soviet Navy.

Observation planes and light bombers are largely of the R5 and R5 bis model, a single motor plane somewhat resembling the British Gordon type. They have a speed

of 270 km.p.h. All planes of this type are equipped with radio, however, only two planes in each flight have sending apparatus. The armament consists of two rigid machine guns capable of a rate of fire of 960 rounds p.m. and a twin machine gun mounted in the observer's seat, the "Dyegtyarev" machine gun (250 rds.p.m.). The primary mission of the R5 type plane is the maintenance of liaison with moto-mechanized units.

The bi-motored bomber R6 has a speed of 260 km.p.h. at an altitude of 3,000 meters. It can carry 500 kg. of bombs a distance of 800 km.

Several squadrons are equipped with two-seater autogyro planes. Experiments are being now conducted with several types of attack planes.

The Air Academy includes a Tactical School and a School of Aviation Engineering. Soviet Russia, moreover, has a school for air navigation, a scientific research institute, and 33 schools for the practical and theoretical training of pilots, observers and other personnel. The Ossoaviachim operates 20 preparatory schools for pilots, and plans have already been approved for 60 additional schools.

Soviet Russia produces at present all of its aviation matériel. According to Pierre Coty, French Minister of Aviation, who visited Russia in 1933, within five years (that is by 1938) Russia will be able to produce more airplanes than the rest of Europe combined.

The antiaircraft defense consists of one AA battalion (189 AA guns) for each of the twenty corps. In addition, the artillery reserve includes three AA regiments (90 AA guns). There are a large number of fixed AA installations as well as AA artillery on railway mounts. The number of these and of searchlight batteries is unknown.

Soviet air tactics appear to concentrate on offensive operations, paying particular attention to the tactics of invasion of hostile territory, and the destruction of hostile industrial centers and transportation. The dropping of communist propagandists and agitators in hostile territory to undermine enemy morale is one of the projects. The strategic advantage of Soviet Russia is obvious, for as S. Amiragov pointed out in an article published in the October (1934) number of *Voyna y Revolutsiya*, "the industrial and political centers of Soviet Russia's potential enemies are much nearer to the Russian air bases than is the case the other way around."

—*Militär Wochenblatt*—March 18, 1935.

IMPORTANT LESSONS OF THE CHACO WAR. By Wim Brandt.

Hostilities on the Chaco front were suspended by an armistice on June 12. The deductions presented by the author are, therefore, particularly timely. Climatic conditions and the nature of terrain, he points out, which prevented the employment of large masses of artillery and cavalry, turned the war into an essentially infantry campaign. The density of vegetation in the tropical jungles

made it impossible to employ cavalry even for purposes of reconnaissance, it did not, however, interfere with the effectiveness of aerial reconnaissance which proved quite satisfactory in identifying troop concentrations and movements under cover of woods.

One of the most important lessons of the Chaco war, in the author's opinion, is the relative value of small elite armies and the levy en masse, with the decision in favor of the latter. At the outbreak of the war, the author states, Bolivia had one of the best armies in South America. During the early part of the war this small elite army fought against the rapidly assembled levies of Paraguay. Although successful initially, Bolivia's army soon spent itself, and inevitably suffered defeat. Only when Bolivia resorted to a general mobilization of her available manpower did she succeed in reestablishing something of an equilibrium.

The author finds that the training of troops in the use of modern weapons is comparatively simple. Generally three months sufficed to turn ignorant, illiterate individuals into fairly effective machine gunners or tank men. The overwhelming strength of modern defense, he states, presages prolonged warfare to the ultimate exhaustion, economic, military as well as technical, of the belligerents. Frontal attacks invariably failed even though defensive positions were thinly held, and reserves frequently absent altogether. Defensive fires of automatic weapons were very effective in breaking up attacks. The Vickers small tank proved unsatisfactory. The "Light Vickers 32," on the contrary, rendered effective service in the attack as well as in the defense. Chemical agents were not used.

The machine pistol, a new weapon used in large numbers, proved a very formidable weapon as did the 81 mm. Stokes-Brandt mortar. It has a range of 3,000 meters and can be carried by three men. The 47 mm. and 65 mm. mortars were unsatisfactory. Field artillery pieces of less than 105 mm. caliber were ineffective. This gun, the author observes, requires the same motive power as the smaller 75's or 65's, and that is, in his opinion, an added reason why there is no real need for a gun of intermediate caliber between the antitank gun and the 105 mm. gun. The Oerlikon automatic gun proved a failure. Two pieces exploded in action killing their crews. In point of actual effectiveness, the Oerlikon proved inferior to all other types of machine gun. It failed to bring down a single airplane.

GREAT BRITAIN—*Journal of the Royal United Service Institution*—February, 1935.

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE TANK. By Major J. K. Edwards, M.C., Scots Guards.

The modern tank developed since the World War in mobility, endurance and fire power. As to its tactical employment, the author states, two schools of thought have crystallized. The one favors independent tank action unrestricted by close coöperation with less mobile troops while the other adheres to the idea that the primary rôle of the tank still is the close support of infantry by

fire and shock action against hostile machine guns.

The dominating factor in the World War, the author writes, was the power of the defense and the impotence of the attack in the face of the devastating effect of the fire of concealed machine guns combined with the use of barbed wire. As a result, the infantryman was loaded down with every conceivable weapon and contrivance to assist him in his contest with the enemy machine gun. Prior to 1917 some success in the attack had been achieved by great barrages, but they eliminated possibility of surprise and cut up the ground to such an extent that the fruits of victory could not be gathered before the enemy could stabilize his front. The tank changed that situation.

The development of the tank since the war rendered timing of infantry and tank attacks increasingly difficult. Thus, the author points out, if the infantry line of departure is 3,000 yards from the objective and tanks are to cover the infantry during the last 2,000 yards, tanks travelling at 15 miles an hour must be on the objective 40 minutes before the infantry, moving at 1½ miles an hour, can arrive. During this time tanks would be exposed to antitank weapons while unable to exploit their own mobility. Again, a tank battalion supporting infantry advances over a front of 1,500 yards, thus barely covering the front of one infantry battalion. It will leave the enemy outside the zone of tank action free to concentrate on the attacking infantry. These considerations, the author states, cause officers of the Royal Tank Corps and others as well to look upon close coöperation with infantry attacks with increasing impatience, and they are turning to operations in which tank units maneuver like battle squadrons at sea. They argue that it is uneconomical to employ a costly weapon with a radius of action of a hundred miles and a speed of 15 miles an hour to support infantry within a restricted area, perhaps even over terrain unsuited to tanks. Such attacks, they hold, will frequently be made against the strongest portion of the hostile front, and that the preparations for the infantry attack will most likely prejudice the chances of surprise. They believe that tanks could give maximum assistance to infantry by breaking through the hostile front elsewhere, and operating against enemy gun lines and nerve centers. Such plan would exploit the special characteristics of the tank, and the moral effect it would produce would support the infantry at a minimum cost to tanks.

Those holding opposite views, the author states, do not minimize the potentialities of tanks employed with armored and mechanized forces, yet they are convinced that the infantry still is required to attack and capture defended positions, and to do so successfully the infantry requires an antidote to concealed machine guns, and the war proved that the tank is the most effective weapon to deal with that form of opposition. Hence, they argue, if close coöperation between tanks and infantry is to be exceptional, what is there to take the place of the tank?

The author believes that the effectiveness of the support given by tanks attacking independently should be

greatly discounted for the reason that tanks are no longer a novelty as they were in the World War when their moral effect frequently proved decisive. Counter attacks by the defender's tanks must be expected, and since these will have the advantage of familiarity with terrain, the prospects of success become doubtful. In the author's opinion, tanks will have many tasks to perform, hence the design of tanks and the organization of tank units must be suited to their probable employment. The infantry support tank should have cross-country mobility, a good machine-gun platform, and a small crew. It should be a low-cost weapon. Endurance is a secondary consideration. In the attack it must render maximum support; in the defense it should form a mobile reserve of fire power available for counterattacks. The author regards the incorporation of infantry tank battalions within the division a practical necessity of the day.

HUNGARY—*Magyar Katonai Szemle*—March, 1935.

THE REORGANIZATION OF THE ITALIAN ARMY. By Vitez Stephen Berko, Jr.

The recently effected reorganization of the Royal Italian Army provides four Army headquarters, 12 corps and a separate Sicilian command. These comprise 29 infantry divisions and three motorized divisions.

The infantry consists of one brigade of grenadiers of three regiments, 29 infantry brigades (88 regiments of the line and 12 regiments of bersaglieri), 4 brigades of Alpine Rifles (9 regiments) and one tank regiment. A total of 112 regiments. The officer complement of the infantry includes 273 colonels, 737 lieutenant colonels, 906 majors, 3,132 captains and 2,589 subalterns.

The three cavalry brigades comprise 12 regiments and one tank regiment. The officer personnel of the cavalry consists of 25 colonels, 76 lieutenant colonels, 100 majors, 263 captains and 230 subalterns.

The artillery is organized in twelve corps groups and a separate Sicilian artillery group with a total of 30 regiments of field artillery, 12 regiments medium artillery, 1 regiment horse artillery, 4 regiments mountain artillery, 10 regiments heavy artillery, 5 regiments AA artillery, and one regiment each of light and mixed artillery. There are 135 colonels, 363 lieutenant colonels, 460 majors, 1,547 captains and 1,378 subaltern officers in the artillery arm.

Technical troops, like the artillery, are organized in corps units, and include 12 corps engineer regiments, 2 sapper regiments, 2 regiments of pontoniers, 1 railway regiment, and one experimental detachment.

The Italian Army now has 13 tank groups and a Tank Headquarters consisting of 1 general officer (brigadier), 4 colonels and 36 other officers. The number of general officers is 234 including 28 lieutenants general, 62 majors general and the balance brigadiers.

ITALY—*Rivista di Fanteria*—March, 1934.

NEW EQUIPMENT FOR COMMUNICATIONS. By Lieut. Col. Carlo Micheletta and Giovanni Rossoni.

The authors discuss the modern means of signal com-

munications and some of the most recent types of instruments adopted for military use. Among these they describe a portable field telephone weighing approximately seven pounds. It is provided with a standard type mouthpiece as well as with a laryngophone for use while wearing the gas mask. Lightweight portable wire-drums permit maintenance of telephonic communications on the march as well as in any other mobile situation.

The Italian Army also developed a portable dry-cell operated signal lantern weighing about 19 lbs. Its effective sending range is approximately 2 to 4 km. in daytime and a maximum of 10 km. at night.

A portable radiophone set is now being issued to Italian infantry regiments for service within the regimental sector. It is dry-cell operated, with batteries capable of seven days' service. The apparatus weighs more than the specified 32 lbs. It is carried strapped to the back of a soldier ready for constant use. It has a radius of action of 16 km. when used as a radiophone, and 12 km. as a wireless telegraph set. The authors note that the most serious problem presented by this most modern equipment of communication is the difficulty of procuring operating personnel possessing the necessary educational qualifications to secure efficient functioning.

U.S.S.R.—*Voyna y Revolutsiya*—January-February, 1935.

MILITARY DEVELOPMENTS OF 1934 IN JAPAN, GERMANY, AND POLAND. By A. Petrov.

The author states that Japan, Germany, and Poland have concluded an anti-Soviet alliance, and that they are now trying to secure the adherence of other states contiguous to Soviet Russia. According to available information, he states, the Japanese program of army reorganization and reëquipment is progressing more slowly than was expected. Nevertheless, it will be concluded by the end of 1935. He states that at the beginning of the current year the Japanese Air Force consisted of more than 1,600 first line airplanes divided about evenly between the Army and Navy. The effective strength of the Japanese Army is about 320,000 men. Army training emphasizes landing and night operations, and attacks against fortified positions. The Japanese Army modernized its tactics, and developed coöperation of the several arms, notably between tanks, aviation and chemical warfare.

Germany, the author states, organized 14 new divisions and one motorized division. He places the strength of the German Army at 300,000, and states that it is particularly well provided with heavy and AA artillery, tank battalions and antitank guns. Hitler's blackshirt storm detachments have been transformed into a militia. With universal compulsory service reintroduced, the German Army has become one of the most formidable war machines in Europe. The German air force has 700-1,000 planes. About 150 plants employing 120,000 workers are engaged in the production of war matériel.

BOOK REVIEWS

THE CAMPAIGN OF THE MARNE-1914. By Sewell Tyng. Longmans, Green and Co., New York, 1935. \$3.75.

"It is perhaps needless to enlarge upon the Campaign of the Marne. It represents the period within which the General Staffs of the two greatest military powers of Europe put into execution, each to its own discomfiture, the elaborate plans matured during the preceding forty years. From a military standpoint, it constitutes a complete phase, particularly adapted to unity of treatment, during which the opposing forces engaged in a type of operations that did not recur in the course of the next four years. Never before in history and never again in the World War were so many battles of the first magnitude fought within so brief a space. It forms, moreover the transitional link between the wars of the past and the mechanized warfare of our era. Nor is it solely an object of academic historical interest, for the experiences of the Marne and the lessons to be derived from it are not solely of the past. In essence the problems and difficulties that beset both sides were those that must arise again. . . ."

Thus does Lieutenant Sewell Tyng remind us in the introduction to his new book that the Campaign of the Marne provides valuable study for all military students.

In this book, Lieutenant Tyng presents an unbiased and accurate account of the operations of the first six weeks of the World War—from the mobilizations to the withdrawal of the German armies toward the Aisne. He relates how the celebrated von Schlieffen Plan, formulated by the German Great General Staff, narrowly missed its mark; how the French Plan XVII proved equally ineffective; how Joffre conducted a retreat, for two agonizing weeks, in the face of the enemy on a scale never before attempted; and how, at last, the Allied Armies turned in their tracks overnight to fight and win the "sixteenth decisive battle of the world."

All students of military history are familiar with the fact that the von Schlieffen Plan was simple. With the left and center temporarily on the defensive, an overwhelmingly strong right wing was to sweep the French from west to east, the great hammer head first moving through Holland and Belgium. Von Moltke's change in the plan robbed the right of its necessary power, and respected the neutrality of Holland.

The foundation of this book is laid impartially upon the official French, British, Belgian, and German his-

stories, supplemented by other sources. The 413 pages contain 20 maps in addition to the text.

The author is a first lieutenant in the Military Intelligence-Reserve of our Army, and has previously written a number of historical articles, among which is "A French Cavalry Raid at the Marne," published in the September-October, 1934, number of *THE CAVALRY JOURNAL*.

The story covers all that is essential for one who desires to learn exactly what occurred during this rapidly moving period of the World War. In it Lieutenant Tyng has presented valuable material which will serve as a guide to future students and writers.

ORDEAL BY FIRE. By Fletcher Pratt. Harrison Smith and Robert Haas, New York, 1935. \$3.00.

This informal history of the Civil War is written primarily from the human angle. Statistics are avoided, dates are subdued or omitted, giving an effect of living personalities closely akin to those found in fiction. The important military movements and battles are described in such a manner as to make them comprehensive as well as interesting to "the-man-in-the-street."

The author in his foreword explains that since there is still considerable controversy as to the exact sequence of events, especially in some of the battles, he has purposely omitted the details of these controversies. However, he takes time to discuss all of the important campaigns and the principal battles fought in connection therewith, including the Bull Run, Kentucky, Peninsular, Pope's Antietam, Gettysburg and the Tennessee Mountain Campaigns.

Commencing with the first plot to assassinate Lincoln, on his way to Washington as President-elect, the story carries us through the confusion during the early part of the war, follows the main currents of fact and emotion during the conflict and includes the important things which contributed to the final result. The last scene is the second and successful plot for the killing of the President, and the curtain is rung down abruptly with Stanton's words by the dying President's bedside.

The book contains a preface for the Non-Military Reader, in which is explained such things as the aim of a military campaign, appropriate commands for various grades, and strength and composition of Civil War units.

ORGANIZATION ACTIVITIES

1st Cavalry (Mecz)—Fort Knox, Kentucky

COLONEL BRUCE PALMER, *Commanding*

(MAJOR WILLIS D. CRITTENBERGER, *Temporary Commander*)

ON June 15th the regimental standard of the 1st Cavalry (Mecz), was decorated with four battle streamers recently awarded by the War Department to commemorate battle service of the regiment during the Mexican War nearly a century ago. On that occasion Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, commanding the Seventh Cavalry Brigade, presented the streamers as a part of the ceremony of "Escort to the Standard," with the entire regiment participating.

With the addition of these streamers the standard of the 1st Cavalry will carry a total of forty-two battle honors commemorating the regiment's long and distinguished combat service of which it is justly proud.

The appearance of the 1st Cavalry at the ceremony for the decoration of its standard with these streamers differed considerably from its appearance at the time they were earned years ago. Just as the First Dragoons were the only cavalry regiment in the Army a hundred years ago, so today the 1st Cavalry is the only mechanized regiment in our Army. In this regiment armored cars, combat cars and trucks have replaced the horses, mules, and ox teams of the Mexican War period. The colorful uniform of the Dragoons with plumed helmets and orange striped pantaloons of sky blue has been replaced with the somber but practical olive drab. The clanking saber and slung carbine have given way to automatic pistols and rattling machine guns. However, regardless of the changes time has wrought in equipment, uniform, and mounts, the spirit that carried those early Dragoons through the hardships of distant campaigns still motivates the 1st Cavalrymen of today. The traditions of the regiment remain unchanged. Battle streamers flying from its standard serve as silent reminders to the present-day troopers of the sacrifices of those earlier soldiers.

On June 10th a mechanized detachment of the 1st Cavalry (Mecz), went to West Point, New York, where it is participating in the summer training period of the cadets of the United States Military Academy. The detachment, commanded by First Lieutenant Isaac D. White, 1st Cavalry (Mecz), consists of two armored cars, two machine-gun carriers, a cargo truck, kitchen truck, a motorcycle and side car and 28 enlisted men.

2d Cavalry — Fort Riley, Kansas

COLONEL DORSEY R. RODNEY, *Commanding*

THE regiment regrets the loss of Colonel Selwyn D. Smith who has been its able commander during the

past three years. Colonel Smith is changing places with Colonel Dorsey R. Rodney at Michigan State.

Major Adolphus W. Roffe is in temporary command of the regiment pending the arrival of Colonel Rodney.

Staff Sergeant Richard Irby has been promoted to the grade of Warrant Officer with station in Omaha, Nebraska. Sergeant Herman Kline was promoted to fill the vacancy created by the advancement of Warrant Officer Irby.

We are proud of the accomplishments of the noncommissioned officers who were selected to attend the Special Advanced Equitation Course at The Cavalry School, Sergeant Roy Childers, M.G. Troop, and Sergeant Howard P. Null, Troop E. These men won several classes in the graduation equestrian events.

Orders have been received detailing Major John E. Selby to New Mexico Military Institute, Roswell, New Mexico, where he will be Professor of Military Science and Tactics.

First Lieutenant Louis B. Rapp has joined and has been assigned to the M.G. Troop. First Lieutenant Gordon B. Rogers has been placed on duty with Troop B.

The regiment will be engaged this month in furnishing mounts and equipment for the O.R.C., which will be in training here from July 5th to 19th. At present the regiment is engaged in firing on the range with both rifle and machine gun.

3d Cavalry (Less 1st Squadron)— Fort Myer, Virginia

COLONEL KENYON JOYCE, *Commanding*

THE 3d Cavalry completed its training season with a formal inspection of the post by Major General Robert E. Callan, Commanding General of the 3d Corps Area. General Callan's inspection consisted of a review of the command, a visit to various buildings and facilities, and a tactical problem assigned to each troop for solution.

Camp Guy V. Henry, named in honor of the late Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, father of Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, present Commandant of the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, Kansas, opened on June 16th with the arrival of thirty-four students from the R.O.T.C. units at Virginia Military Institute and Valley Forge Military Academy. Captains George D. Wiltshire and Francis P. Tompkins, and First Lieutenant Frederick deL. Comfort were at Fort Myer for the R.O.T.C. Camp.

The 1935 C.M.T. Camp opened on July 2d with 192 candidates enrolled. C. M. T. C. training is being conducted by the officers of the 306th Cavalry, which regiment is commanded by Colonel J. B. P. Clayton Hill, former member of Congress from Maryland.

The Goodrich Trophy is now permanently in the possession of the 3d Cavalry, having been won three times by a troop of the regiment. In a very pleasing ceremony conducted in the office of the Chief of Cavalry, the trophy was formally presented to Colonel Kenyon Joyce, regimental commander, who accepted it for the regiment "to have and to hold."

On June 13th, at the Fort Myer Gardens, the 3d Cavalry, before a crowd of several thousand presented an exhibition drill and demonstration for the Shriners who were in annual convention in Washington. The program consisted of an exhibition of the various types of cavalry equipment, both garrison and field, different types of mounts and the new type scout cars and trucks. In addition, there was held a demonstration of officers' jumping over both the Olympic and outside courses, and the famous musical drill of Troop E. The stirring finale was presented by the Machine-Gun Troop in which the mobility of the mounted machine gun, including an "in and out of action" drill, was demonstrated.

The same evening the regiment participated with great

credit to itself in the gigantic pageant held by the Shriners during their convention by furnishing eight four-horse chariots and drivers, forty gladiators, and numerous cowboys, bandits, Arabs, etc. The cavalymen showed great versatility by engaging in various pageantry drills, stage-coach hold-ups, and gladiatorial combats and were received with much enthusiasm all along the route of march.

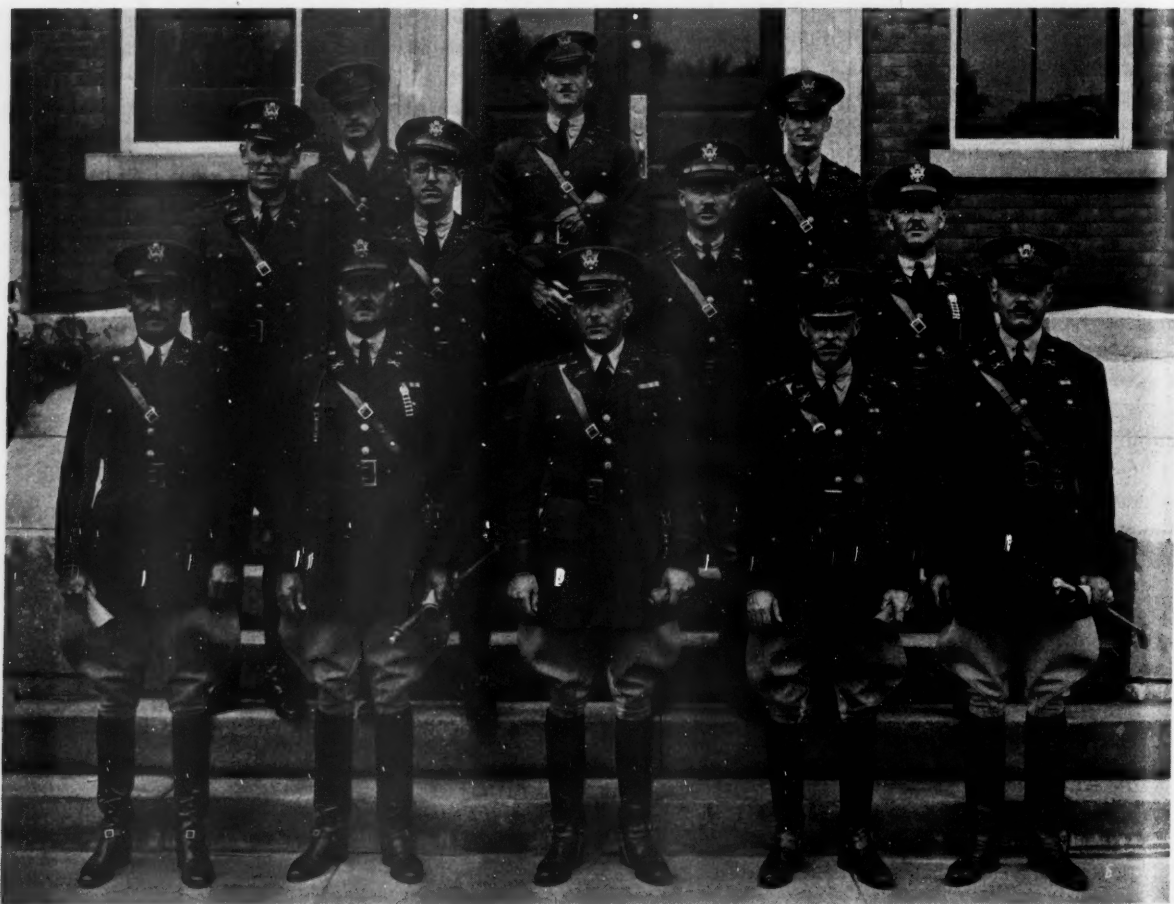
1 1 1

1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry—Fort Ethan Allen, Vt.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL ARTHUR E. WILBOURN,
Commanding

ON May 19th the Squadron observed Regimental Organization Day. Lieutenant Colonel Arthur E. Wilbourn addressed the assembled squadron, stressing the proud battle record of the 3d Cavalry. A baseball game followed, the cavalry winning over the artillery. In the evening the cavalry were hosts at dinners and entertainments.

The course of rifle marksmanship was completed June



OFFICERS OF THE 1ST SQUADRON, 3D CAVALRY

Front row, left to right: Captain Hugh G. Culton, Captain Randolph Russell, Lieutenant Colonel Arthur E. Wilbourn, Captain Lawrence G. Forsythe, Captain James M. Glasgow.

Second row, left to right: First Lieutenant Alan L. Fulton, Second Lieutenant James L. Dalton, First Lieutenant Richard B. Evans, First Lieutenant Roland A. Brown.

Third row, left to right: Second Lieutenant Edwin M. Cahill, Second Lieutenant William B. Bunker, Second Lieutenant Robert W. Fuller.

3d. Try-outs for candidates for the Cavalry Rifle Team were fired concurrently.

During the period June 16th-29th, Troop B, 3d Cavalry, under Captain Hugh G. Culton, 3d Cavalry, had in training, at the West Bolton Camp, 41 Reserve Officers of New England units. Following the departure of this contingent, 85 officers of the 315th Cavalry (94th Division), arrived to remain in training until July 20th. The program is strenuous and interesting and has the enthusiastic endorsement of the trainees.

Troop A, commanded by Captain Randolph Russell, 3d Cavalry, is engaged in training 53 members of the Cavalry Unit, C.M.T.C., now tented at the Concurrent Camp.

The Cavalry Platoon Leadership Test, conceived by Lieutenant Colonel Arthur E. Willbourn, 3d Cav., provided a splendid program for training and conditioning both men and horses. Enthusiasm ran high in platoons of both troops and the outcome was closely contested. A description of the test is found in the account of the Fort Ethan Allen Annual Horse Show.

Over the July 4th holidays the section of scout cars attached to this Squadron, marched to Newport, Vermont, and there participated in the July Fourth parade and gave a demonstration at the County fair grounds. The vehicles aroused great interest among the civilian population. The section, commanded by Second Lieutenant James L. Dalton, 3d Cavalry, has given several demonstrations for trainees of civilian components.

Troop A leaves here July 19th and marches on Pine Camp, N. Y., to reach there on July 27th. The Squadron, less Troop A, will leave for Pine Camp on July 30th. Reconnaissance has been made by the Squadron Commander and his staff. Captain Joseph M. Glasgow has been relieved from duty with the Civilian Conservation Corps and has been assigned as Class A Agent Officer and Plans and Training Officer for the Squadron.

The Squadron will make the return march from Pine Camp to Fort Ethan Allen September 2d-11th. A series of tactical situations are planned.

Major and Mrs. Frederick H. L. Ryder, arrived here June 30th from National Guard duty in Boston, Mass. Major Ryder has been assigned to duty as senior inspector of the 2d C.C.C. District.

On May 10th last, Captain and Mrs. Lawrence G. Forsythe came to this post from Stotsenburg, P. I. Captain Forsythe has taken over the duties of Squadron Adjutant.

5th Cavalry — Fort Clark, Texas

COLONEL CHARLES B. AMORY, JR., *Commanding*

THE most recent addition to the regiment has been the arrival of sixty remounts. These remounts are a very fine type of horse and show considerable breeding, as verified by their descriptive cards. In the group are a few thoroughbreds and a great number of one-half thorough-

breds or better. They have been grouped for training under the supervision of Captain Carleton Burgess, being ridden by selected noncommissioned officer riders from each troop. This has resulted in each letter troop and the Machine-Gun Troop getting twelve remounts, an addition greatly needed.

Our first increment of recruits have been turned on duty after a ten weeks' training period under First Lieutenant John O'D. Murtaugh. The first ten days of this period was devoted to training as prescribed by the Eighth Corps Area order for recruit instruction, teaching each recruit how to saddle, care for his horse, pack his saddle, march up to twenty miles, the use of weapons and fundamental field duties.

Forty-two Cavalry R.O.T.C. students from the Agricultural and Mechanical College of Texas, and Oklahoma Military Academy started their six weeks' training period here on June 2d, with Troop B, 5th Cavalry, as parent organization.

The first of two active duty training periods, of two weeks each, for the O.R.C., started here July 7th. The first camp, July 7th to July 20th inclusive, has forty-two Reserve Officers who have taken over the 5th Cavalry for this period. They will take the regiment into the field the second week for five days' field duty.

The post target season will run from August 12th to October 30th this year.

Troop F sent its "Monkey Drill Team" to Del Rio, Texas, to participate by exhibiting at the annual rodeo. They made another fine and popular showing.

The Fort Clarke boxing tournament, sponsored by the 5th Cavalry Noncommissioned Officers' Club, popular and well attended, has been completed. Several special exhibitions, against outside talent, were successfully staged.

A brigade review was held in honor of Brigadier General Evan H. Humphrey who took command of the 1st Cavalry Brigade June 18, 1935. Majors Lucien M. Berry and Charles L. Clifford have reported for duty, each commanding a squadron of the 5th Cavalry. Captain Malcom Byrne has left for Fort Meade, S. D.

6th Cavalry — Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

COLONEL LLEWELLYN W. OLIVER, *Commanding*

ON May 28th the regiment returned from Fort Benning where it participated in regimental and brigade tactical exercises.

Pistol practice will be completed in the early part of August and rifle practice will be conducted during September.

An important activity at this time is the training of recruits. Nearly two hundred of these men will be received by this regiment.

The following units are scheduled for summer camp training at this station: R.O.T.C., University of Georgia; 108th Cavalry, Georgia and Louisiana National Guard;

109th Cavalry, Tennessee and North Carolina National Guard; Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, 55th Cavalry Brigade, Alabama National Guard; 313th Cavalry, Organized Reserves, from Fifth Corps Area; 309th Cavalry, Organized Reserves; 310th Cavalry, Organized Reserves; C.M.T.C.

Seventy-eight C.C.C. companies are under the administration of the Commanding Officer of Fort Oglethorpe.

The Post Baseball League is active at this season. However, at this writing no championships have been determined.

A skeet club has been organized and with the approach of the shooting season gives promise of much popularity.

Informal horse shows are planned for the summer months. Officers, enlisted men, and children are encouraged to participate.

The officers' club house has been recently overhauled and redecorated. It was very appropriately "christened" on the evening of July 5th with a reception in honor of Colonel Llewellyn W. Oliver, 6th Cavalry, who assumed command of the Post on June 15th.

The 3d Battalion, 22d Infantry, departed from Fort Oglethorpe for permanent station at Fort McClellan on May 27th. This battalion had been stationed at Fort Oglethorpe for eight years, and fine comradeships had developed between the Doughboys and the Leather-legs. The battalion will be missed by their many friends at this station.

7th Cavalry—Fort Bliss, Texas

COLONEL JOSEPH A. BAER, *Commanding*

THE regiment celebrated its Organization Day on June 25th. A ceremony was held in the morning which included addresses by the Division Commander, 1st Cavalry Division, and the Regimental Commander. This was followed by a field meet participated in by all organizations. Both mounted and dismounted events were held. In the evening a supper and dance was conducted under the trees near the bandstand, being attended by all members of the regiment and their guests.

Colonel Joseph A. Baer has received orders from the War Department relieving him from assignment to the regiment and ordering him to duty as Chief of Staff of the Third Corps Area, Baltimore, Maryland, effective in November.

First Lieutenant Henry C. Hine, Jr., Cavalry, has joined the regiment from the Signal School, Fort Monmouth, N. J., and has been assigned to command Headquarters Troop.

The Fort Bliss Tennis Tournament has been in progress for the past two weeks. The finals of the mixed doubles were won, after a most exciting exhibition of play, by Mrs. Frances Kobbe, wife of Lieutenant Colonel Herman Kobbe, 7th Cavalry, and Major Thomas G. Hanson, Jr. The men's doubles were won by First Lieutenants Daniel P. Buckland, 7th Cavalry, and James L. Hathaway, 8th Cavalry.

The regiment has been in camp at the Fort Bliss Target Range, Dona Ana County, New Mexico, since July 1st. Known-distance firing has been completed and the remainder of the month will be devoted to machine-gun firing and to musketry.

8th Cavalry—Fort Bliss, Texas

COLONEL FRANK KELLER, *Commanding*

UPON completion of the collective training period, which was followed by a two-weeks' practice march, the regiment has been engaged in firing pistol, mounted, and dismounted, and preliminary marksmanship preparatory to the annual target season at Dona Anna in August.

Concentration on the training of the new remounts has been conducted under the supervision of Captain Vaughan M. Cannon. On June 29th a competition was held in which the remounts of the first group to arrive were tested. There were two phases to be judged; namely, schooling and jumping. Private First Class Alfred W. Remley of Troop E on *Rascallion* placed first and was presented a silver cup by the regimental commander. Corporal Van E. Allen, Troop A, on *Crown Prince* was second; Corporal George C. Moseley, Troop A, on *Angelic* was third; and Sergeant Arthur J. Goodreau, Troop E, on *Everett* was fourth.

During the period June 4th to July 15th, the regiment sponsored the R. O. T. C. Camp. Major Oliver I. Holman, Cavalry, being the Executive Officer.

On July 1st, 2nd and 3rd enrollees arrived for the annual C. M. T. Camp which is again being conducted by the 8th Cavalry. The opening exercises were held on the morning of July 4th. Lieutenant Colonel Arthur H. Wilson has been detailed as the Camp Executive Officer.

On June 9th fourteen newly commissioned Reserve Officers reported for two weeks' active duty training with the regiment. These men, mostly graduates from the New Mexico Military Institute and the University of Arizona, are of a fine type and responded most enthusiastically to the rather strenuous training schedule which was conducted by Major Ernest N. Harmon.

On May 29th, a regimental review was held in honor of Master Sergeants John Grady and Frank Lang, both of whom were placed on the retired list as of May 31st, after thirty years of loyal and efficient service. The regiment deeply regrets losing these fine non-commissioned officers and will long remember their faithfully performed services.

On May 30th the regiment participated in the Memorial Day services held at the post cemetery. The principal address of the occasion was made by Brigadier General Hamilton S. Hawkins, Post and Division Commander.

One of the most impressive farewell ceremonies in which the 8th Cavalry has participated, was held at 9:00 A.M., June 22d, in honor of Brigadier General George Vidmer, commanding the 2nd Cavalry Brigade, who was

retired from active service. The troops of the brigade formed in front of the General's quarters and the officers and ladies from the entire post gathered to bid farewell. Prior to their departure, Mrs. Vidmer was presented a remembrance from the officers and ladies of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade.

The Corps Area Commander, Major General Johnson Hagood, passed through the post on July 2nd. Upon his arrival, he inspected and then reviewed the 2nd Cavalry Brigade. After his departure, the regimental commander received most favorable comments on the appearance of his men and the condition of horses and equipment.

Horse Show entries from the 8th Cavalry performed most creditably in the Monthly Division Horse Show which was held on June 28th. In Class I, Enlisted Men's Jumping, open to Remounts received on the post since March 1st, Sergeant John J. Mullings, Machine Gun Troop, 8th Cavalry, on *Cartha* won first place, while Private First Class Alfred W. Remley, Troop E, 8th Cavalry, on *Rascallion* placed fourth. In Class III, R. O. T. C. Jumping, the 8th Cavalry provided twelve jumpers for the cadets to use. Cadet Jack W. Knox on *Madam X* placed first; Cadet Ashby I. Lohse, on *Skeeter* was second; Cadet Carl J. O'Dawd, on *Bold* was third; and Cadet Alexander C. Waterhouse, on *Jimmy* was fourth. In Class IV, Children under 14 years, judged on seat and hands, the following places were won: Lowell Cannon on *Rascallion*, second; Davy Donaldson on *Brownie*, third; Johnny Donaldson on *Aleck*, fourth.

In Class V, Children over 14 years, Tommy Donaldson on *Diana* placed third. The next monthly horse show will probably be held the latter part of July.

Baseball—The Regimental Baseball Team is rapidly improving and being rounded out under the direction of Major Ernest N. Harmon, Athletic Officer, and 2nd Lieutenant Joseph A. Cleary, Coach. The Post League opened on June 29th, and to date the 8th Cavalry has won twice from Special Troops (4-3) (15-6); once from the 82nd Field Artillery (17-7), and lost: once to the 7th Cavalry, after 10 innings (8-7), and once to the 82nd Field Artillery (3-1).

Tennis—At the present time a Post Tennis Tournament is in progress on the Club Courts. Members participating from the 8th Cavalry in the men's division are: 1st Lieutenant Frederick W. Drury, 1st Lieutenant James L. Hathaway, 2nd Lieutenant James W. Snee, Cadet Harry Wilson, Bill Hamilton, and Tommy Donaldson.

Among the new arrivals on the Post are Colonel and Mrs. Frank Keller. Members of the regiment are very much pleased that Colonel Keller assumed command of the 8th Cavalry, effective June 29th. Losses to the regiment include: 2d Lieutenants Philip H. Bethune, Frank H. Britton and John R. Pugh, ordered to the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas; 1st Lieutenant Augustine D. Dugan and 2nd Lieutenant Karl T. Gould, transferred to Division Special Troops, and Major Wil-

liam T. Hamilton transferred to Division Headquarters. Another loss in the near future is that of Major Ernest N. Harmon, who goes to duty on the War Department General Staff in Washington.

1 1 1

11th Cavalry — Presidio of Monterey, Calif.

COLONEL RALPH M. PARKER, *Commanding*

THE Presidio of Monterey is the scene of great and varied activity these past few months. Many of the post's officers are on duties in connection with the C.C. C. The Presidio is a district headquarters for 13 camps, ranging from 4 miles to 165 miles in distance from the headquarters. This one activity demands a high percentage of the military personnel. The "S.E.R.A." and the allotted funds for rehabilitation of the post likewise take their toll of both officers and enlisted men. In addition, there is at Presidio of Monterey for training and supply one camp of 226 R.O.T.C. students for six weeks' training with the 76th Field Artillery during July and August. There is also a Citizens Military Training Camp of about 1,000 enrollees and approximately 40 Reserve Officers. This camp is situated on the post proper and is composed of 6 companies of Infantry from Presidio of San Francisco. 120 Reserve Officers, in 3 groups of 40, serve their two weeks' annual active duty with this unit during the months of July and August. There is also one squadron of "C.M.T.C." Cavalry, parented by the 11th Cavalry, and one Battery of Artillery, under the 2nd Battalion, 76th Field Artillery, which is stationed at Presidio of Monterey. Military, social, and various athletics, and mounted sports, together with the usual routine of a mounted command, make Presidio of Monterey one of the most active of military posts during the summer months. With it all the post has had time to hold its annual Hunter Trials and Horse Show in May.

During the past few months the post commander has had a swimming pool constructed near the newly built recreation center on the lower parade. The pool, one of the best meet-type pools in this vicinity, is 105 feet long, and 50 feet wide, providing facilities for as many as six competitors in each swimming race because of its width. The two diving boards, a 1 meter board and a 3 meter board, provide facilities for exhibitions and competition diving. A post swimming team and a water polo team are now under training under the direction of Second Lieutenant Perry B. Griffith, 11th Cavalry, who dived on the West Point swimming team four years.

On June 8th an informal meet was held in order to interest the post in aquatic competition. A formal opening will be held in July with several swimming events and exhibition diving by men and officers of the garrison.

The post has long needed a pool of this type, and the large daily attendance proves its popularity as one of the more desirable points of a post in the process of being made one of the most beautiful in the Army.

Since the completion of the new Recreation Hall with its tap room, Post Exchange, dance floor, gymnasium, basket-ball, and solarium of huge dimensions, boxing has become almost a major diversion at the post. Boxing cards have been arranged which include men of the better class of fighters in California. Bouts are held monthly to "S.R.O." crowds.

Annually on July 4th one of the first line ships of the Pacific Fleet comes into Monterey to pay its respects and to assist in the celebration held on the Presidio and in Monterey. This year the Idaho with a complement of 1,100 officers and men arrived early on the morning of July 3rd. After the usual exchange of official calls and courtesies the ship's crew was landed and the officers were entertained at a ball game, and dinner dance that evening at the Del Monte Hotel while the enlisted men were guests of the enlisted personnel of the Presidio at a dinner and dance at the new post recreation center. On the following morning, the 4th, the ship's crew, the mounted troops of the Presidio, and several hundred civilian clubs paraded through the city of Monterey. During the afternoon the post baseball team again met the Idaho nine only to be defeated by a score of 9 to 4. Several equestrian events, including jumping, machine gun races, and rescue races, and mounted wrestling were held in the ball field to entertain the visitors. On the evening of the 4th, the officers of the Idaho were guests of the post officers and ladies at a dinner at the Officers' Club after which all were taken to the post recreation center to witness a number of excellent boxing bouts.

The Post Baseball League is about half completed. Games are played on the new diamond adjoining the recreation center. All the teams are well matched and competition has been close.

The post has a team in the Mission League composed of 8 fast semi-pro teams. The teams being Spreckles, Watsonville, Salinas, Hollister, Santa Cruz, King City and Santa Cruz. The team has won 3 out of their last 4 games.

The post also has a soft ball team which plays in the Night League in Monterey and Pacific Grove. The team won their first game 5 to 0, defeating the Texaco Team which won the first half championship.

Preparation is now being made with a view to entering a football team in the semi-pro Mission League this fall. The Presidio team played three games last fall with teams outside the post, teams of a semi-professional nature, and won all three of its games very easily. It is hoped that as good results will be obtained this year.

Starting in the fall will be the usual intra-mural bowling tournament and basketball tournament, in which all organizations are represented.

The two 30 foot motor launches obtained from the Transport Service have been in use now for more than a year and are giving excellent service for boating and fishing parties.

The theatre gives two shows daily seven days a week. The old concrete building which has been used as the

theatre has been transformed into a very beautiful place of entertainment.

The entire garrison feels very grateful to all the C.W. A., S.E.R.A. and forestry officials, whose coöperation and artistic talent have made possible so many delightful improvements on the post.

12th Cavalry (Less 2d Squadron)— Fort Brown, Texas

COLONEL KERR T. RIGGS, *Commanding*

IN spite of flood waters of the Rio Grande at record height lasting over a month and causing considerable damage to training areas, and emergency levee repair work, troops have gone forward in true cavalry style and attained training objectives on schedule time.

Flood waters reached an all-time record height on June 5th. Some sixty thousand grain sacks, rushed to Fort Brown on radio instructions from Corps Area Headquarters, were used for sand bags. No appreciable damage was done, except that outlying training areas have been inundated for over a month. Timely flood control work kept the post proper dry.

In spite of the emergency work necessitated by the floods, training and target work have progressed on schedule. Machine Gun and Headquarters Troops completed firing for qualification with the pistol, mounted and dismounted, during the month of June, including all recruits who joined prior to June 10th, and are now engaged in preliminary marksmanship training in preparation for their basic arm qualifications on the target range in August. The 1st Squadron, Major John M. Thompson, commanding, handicapped at first by flood water on the range, completed qualification, combat and proficiency test firing, during the month of June as scheduled, and is now in the post firing the qualification courses with the pistol. The 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry, from Fort Ringgold, Major Rexford E. Willoughby commanding, now occupies the range. This target range, which is now in its second season, is eighteen miles from Fort Brown on the concrete highway which leads to the Gulf of Mexico. Semi-permanent structures, including kitchens, bath house, and tent floors, to accommodate a squadron, were built on high ground overlooking the range at the time of its construction in the spring of 1934.

Having remained just long enough to see the flood emergency over and the first month of annual target season showing gratifying results, Colonel Stephen W. Winfree left the night of June 23rd for his new station at Fort Bliss, Texas. He was escorted to the Southern Pacific railway station by the Scout Car Platoon, where the 12th Cavalry Band and his friends of the garrison and the City of Brownsville were gathered for a farewell send-off. Colonel Winfree had served for over four years at Fort Brown and has a number of friends in the community, who, with the members of the garrison, wish him success and happiness in his new duties. Two days

after the departure of Colonel Winfree, Captain Wallace C. Steiger left for Fort Sam Houston, Texas, for station and duty incident to his detail in the Finance Department.

Major Frederic W. Whitney reported for duty on June 13th, and 2d Lieutenant Marvin C. Johnson reported on June 30th.

On July 8th, Colonel Alva J. Brasted, Chief of Chaplains, visited the post and talked to the assembled men of the garrison.

Preceded by a barrage of local publicity, intensive local recruiting got under way July 1st, and to date over a hundred applicants have been processed and a gratifying number of enlistments completed. If the present influx of applicants continues, the regiment will be very close to the new increased strength by the end of July. The new scout cars and Indiana trucks have been an immense aid in canvassing the scattered towns in the Lower Rio Grande area. The scout cars, especially when flying a troop guidon, and equipped with machine guns and radio, need only the recruiting posters and streamers to present a complete and graphic account of modern cavalry which seldom fails to appeal to young men of Army age.

In the preliminaries of the recruiting campaign, and in most phases of civilian contacts, the 12th Cavalry Band under the direction of Warrent Officer Wilford G. Archambeault, has played a leading part. Civic and patriotic celebrations in Valley towns are built around the 12th Cavalry Band whenever it can be made available for them.

Although these other activities have been thrust to the foreground of the summer scene, the cavalry horse must stand out in the picture. Forty remounts of excellent quality have been received from the Fort Reno Depot. They have just been released from quarantine, assigned to troops, and have started a fourteen weeks' training schedule under selected riders. They will be trained and conditioned as a group, under the supervision of First Lieutenant Raymond D. Palmer, and his assistant Second Lieutenant Marvin C. Johnson, who has just reported from The Cavalry School. Considering the obvious quality of these remounts, they are expected to render an excellent account of themselves in future horseshows, polo matches, and training tests.

2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry— Fort Ringgold, Texas

MAJOR REXFORD E. WILLOUGHBY, *Commanding*

THE squadron less a small caretaking detachment left July 1st for the target range at Boca Chica to be absent for about one month.

Troops E and F have completed their pistol firing with the following results:

	Mounted	Dismounted
Troop E	100%	95%
Troop F	100%	100%

The mounted pistol trophy presented by Lieutenant Colonel Levi G. Brown, to be competed for annually for ten years, was won by Troop F for the year 1935. Both troops having qualified 100%, the trophy was awarded the troop having the highest average score. There was a difference of less than one per cent between the two troops.

Organization Day, June 29th, was celebrated by a ball game with San Juan in the afternoon which resulted in a defeat for the cavalry by a score of 5 to 2. The 12th Cavalry orchestra played for an enlisted men's dance in the evening and a very enjoyable picnic was held by the officers in honor of the new arrivals at the post. The War Department authorized a free showing of "Roberta" to members of the 12th Cavalry as a part of the Organization Day program.

The post baseball team played twelve games with outside teams this year.

The following officers have reported during the period: Major Milo B. Dunning and First Lieutenant John DeW. Morley, Medical Corps, Second Lieutenant William E. Jennings, Veterinary Corps, and First Lieutenants Verne D. Mudge, John G. Minniece, Jr., and John J. La Ppage, 12th Cavalry. Lieutenants Mudge and Minniece have been assigned to Troop F and Lieutenants La Ppage to Troop E. Captain Don W. Sawtelle has been assigned to the command of Troop E.

13th Cavalry — Fort Riley, Kansas

COLONEL CHARLES F. MARTIN, *Commanding*

THE 13th Cavalry made all preparations for an extended march and maneuver with the Cavalry School Brigade to Fort Leavenworth scheduled to start June 5th. However the flooding of the lower areas of Fort Riley and adjacent communities on June 3rd necessitated the cancellation of the march. The regiment participated in local flood relief work for the next week, after which preliminary training for the rifle season became of first importance. The regiment is now firing on the National Range at Fort Riley with gratifying success.

Summer training camps at Fort Riley started on June 17th. The regiment is furnishing details for the instruction of the students, these details varying from use of the entire regiment down to small details for musketry and equitation instruction.

The organization day of the 13th Cavalry normally falls on May 1st. This date conflicted with the field maneuver of the Cavalry School and was postponed to the first available date, which in this case very fittingly fell on the 13th of the month. The program consisted of an address by Colonel Charles F. Martin, the regimental commander; a brief history of the regiment by First Lieutenant Hugh W. Stevenson; followed by appropriate moving pictures of activities of the 13th Cavalry. The baseball games scheduled for the afternoon were cancel-

led because of rain. Each troop had special menus for the evening meals, and an enlisted men's dance was held at the post gymnasium in the evening.

Forty excellent remounts were received from the Fort Robinson Depot during the month of June. The heat and flies have retarded their training, somewhat, but, by adopting "racing stable hours," five to nine A.M., it is hoped to have these horses ready for duty soon after the first of September.

The regimental baseball team played the Guard and Service Company, Fort Leavenworth, on July 4th, winning the morning game by a score of 9 to 5. In the afternoon the 13th Cavalry second team, composed largely of recruits, was defeated by the Guard and Service Company by a score of 17 to 3. The results show that the recruits are not finished ball players, but, with more training and experience, several of them will undoubtedly develop into first class players.

In the recent graduation events for the Non-commissioned Officers Class, Special Advanced Equitation, The Cavalry School, Corporal Robert W. Georisch, Troop E, and Corporal Avery G. Mills, Troop F, placed in several events.

Corporal Alfred Peterson, Headquarters Troop, graduated from the Quartermaster Corps Motor School, Camp Holabaird, Baltimore, Maryland, with a Gold Seal Diploma and has rejoined the regiment.

Privates first class, Specialists 4th class Leslie L. Ganson and Roy A. Davis of Headquarters Troop have rejoined the regiment upon their graduation from the Signal Service School, Fort Monmouth, New Jersey. Private Ganson graduated first in his class in the Radio Electrician's Course and received the Gold Seal Diploma given for this superior work.

Major Charles R. Johnson left the regiment June 10th, for duty at P. M. S. & T., Norwich University, Northfield, Vermont. Major William T. Bauskett left recently for duty with the organized reserves at Boston, Mass.

14th Cavalry (Less 1st Squadron)— Fort Des Moines, Iowa

COLONEL CLARENCE LININGER, *Commanding*

FOREMOST among the activities of the 14th Cavalry has been the march of concentration by the entire regiment mentioned elsewhere in this number of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL. It is the hope of all that as elaborate a culmination of annual tactical training as this year's has been may be had in 1936.

The Fort Des Moines troops marched in the Memorial Day procession in the city of Des Moines just before the departure on the "hike."

On the night of June 29th an officers' jumping team, consisting of Captains Royden Williamson, Henry H. Cheshire and Mark A. Devine, Jr., First Lieutenant Wm. J. Bradley, Second Lieutenant Joseph H. O'Malley and Matthew W. Kane, took part in a horse show held at the

Iowa State Fair grounds in aid of the Des Moines Junior League. Captain Cheshire, riding *Tex* won.

No relaxation followed the return from Rock Island as it was necessary at once to prepare for a C.M.T. Camp which is now in progress with an attendance of nearly 700 enrollees. The cavalry contingent consists of three troops with a strength of some eighty each under the sponsorship of its corresponding troop of the regiment. Regular officers supervise the conduct of the units by the reserve officers assigned. The camp adjoins that of the two C.C.C. companies on the post and is located in rear of the Post Hospital where it presents an imposing spectacle.

Meanwhile, the regular organizations are making ready to receive the many new recruits who are expected by the middle of August to bring their strengths up to at least 115 men each. This is calling for new equipment and considerable re-arrangement in barracks.

Arrivals and departures incidental to this period of the year have been numerous. Among the newcomers are Major George A. King who reported on June 27th and has been assigned to command of the 2d Squadron. Major J. W. Geer just before the march to Rock Island replaced as Plans and Training Officer Captain Royden Williamson, who was assigned to the command of Troop E, vice Captain Mark A. Devine, Jr., who moved over to the command of Headquarters Troop. First Lieutenant Wilbur K. Noel, Troop F, is under orders for detail as a student at Washington and Lee University Law School as a preliminary to his transfer to the Judge Advocate General's Department. Second Lieutenant Harry J. Fleege left recently to become one of next year's troop officer students at the Cavalry School.

The garrison is depleted since the departure on July 19th of the 3d Battalion, 80th Field Artillery, for service practice and training of civilian components at Camp Ripley, Minnesota. The cavalry has completed about half its range firing; it will complete qualification and record practice after the conclusion of the C.M.T.C. which terminates August 8th.

26th Cavalry (PS)—Fort Stotsenburg, P. I.*

COLONEL E. KEARSLEY STERLING, *Commanding*

VISUALIZE Fort Ethan Allen or Fort Riley in January, the kind of training the troops get in mid-winter—furs, ear muffs, galoshes, blanket-lined horse covers—and yet on this side of the world at the beginning of this year, with the thermometer at 80 fahrenheit, the 26th Cavalry marched thirty miles from Fort Stotsenburg to Camp Treadwell, Macabebe, to carry on a course of training in crossing the unfordable Pampanga River.

For two days the troops practiced and experimented in an effort to determine the best method for crossing the men, animals and equipment. The individual equipment

*Mailed at Fort Stotsenburg, June 18, 1935.

of two shelter halves. A machine gun and its equipment of the men was crossed in a "two man float" made out of a "machine gun float" made out of the machine gun canvas rigging covers.

On the third day a tactical situation was drawn up which necessitated the crossing of the Rio Grande de Pamanga River from the south to the north bank on a broad front, the six troops abreast. The river at this place was about 150 yards wide, 20 to 30 feet deep, with a swift current, and steep banks on each side. At 10:55 A.M., January 17th, the regiment was mounted full pack on a front of about one and one-half miles on the south side of the river. Each troop was at a suitable place on this front where a crossing could be made. At the given signal at 11:00 A.M., the troops dismounted, unsaddled, made their floats, undressed and crossed. Did I hear a question? "But, now did the officers cross?" Yes, grey haired officer oldsters along with pink cheeked shave tails, accoutred as Balugas, "plunged in this troubled Tiber. The torrent roar'd but they did buffet it with lusty sinews throwing it aside and stemming it with hearts of controversy." It is said that Louis Rapp made the fastest crossing, that Ernie Williams came over in a machine gun float looking like Washington crossing the Delaware, and that Gordon Heron decided to take it easy and hold to a horse's tail thus correctly applying the principle of the economy of force.

A solution (at one time in my career I would have said the approved solution, but no more) to this little problem was to first send across one platoon of swimmers, each two men pushing their own float; this platoon, upon reaching the opposite bank, to act as a covering force and certain of the men to receive the animals as they were sent over. The animals immediately followed this covering force and then the remainder of the troop swam across with their floats. The troops crossed without confusion or noise, (tooting our own horn). Arriving on the north bank, animals were caught, floats were dismantled, rolls made, men dressed, animals saddled, and at 12:12 P.M., the last troop was mounted ready for the command, "Forward, march."

In February the regiment participated with the Philippine Division in the annual maneuvers on Bataan Peninsula. We were on the go for eighteen days and had plenty of heat, bolo work cutting trails, marching, and maneuvering. It was here that the Filipino soldier shows up to his best advantage. Nothing was too much trouble; no matter what the hardship, there was no complaining; all hands pitched in with a tenacity of purpose and a determination to "win the war."

It may be remarked in passing that for two days while Lieutenant Colonel Bob Cheney and his 1st Squadron were retiring from their position, that the staff was having goose pimples worrying over the plight of Captain Seabury and his cohorts of the 2d Squadron who had

been ordered by superior authority to go over a long lost logging camp trail (?) to gain contact with a battalion of the 57th Infantry. It seems that the poor boys of the 2d, after much bolo work for about two days, at last found the trail "no got." While S-1, S-2, S-3 and S-4 had been conferring, deliberating, estimating, and getting out the order to return the way they went, the starving lads in the wilderness had sent out scouts to try and round up Joe Roger's long lost pack train or, as a last resort, to corral some pigs and goats to eat in the approved Igorot manner. In fact, there were rumors that Valentine was contemplating the slaughter of his steed, *Gari-baldi*, and that Berilla had been found sequestered in a shady nook, casting covetous, hungry glances at a fat, young pooch hound tied to a nearby banana plant. Upon the arrival of the message to return to the regiment, the worthy 2d Squadron was only too glad to retrace footsteps to the Brigade C.P.

However, in the maneuvers we didn't "fight" all the time, and on a few of the evenings during the lull of battle we cemented our friendship with the officials of the town of Balanga, studied the psychology of the native politicians, and found it well worth while maintaining and improving friendly relations with the civilian population.

The regiment is now preparing to take part in the 4th of July parade in Manila, a march of 140 miles, all over hard road. It will be rather pleasant to see the bright lights again.

Six scout cars assigned to the regiment arrived a month ago and Lieutenant Withers has been demonstrating the possibilities of these mighty wagons. However, it took several vehicles to pull him, with Colonel Sterling as a passenger, out of a Carabao Wallow where the car had sunk to three and one-half feet.

* * *

305th Cavalry — Philadelphia, Pa.

COLONEL MATTHEW F. JAMES, Cavalry-Reserve,
Commanding

JUNE ended the 1934-1935 inactive duty training period of the 305th Cavalry. It was generally conceded to be an entirely successful year of training by instructors and members of the regiment. As a dramatic gesture near the end of the season, a series of equestrian games were staged on the estate of Mr. Alfred Biddle, Newtown Square, Pennsylvania, Saturday, June 15th.

Major Charles L. Clifford, Cavalry, former Unit Instructor of the regiment, left Philadelphia during the month of June for his new station, Fort Clark, Texas. "Vale atque Ave!"

Now that we are well into the summer, we are become actively active-duty-training conscious! Training will take place as usual at Fort Myer, Virginia; the period

will be August 11th to 24th; and the quota, two field officers and twelve troop officers.

306th Cavalry — Baltimore, Maryland

COLONEL J. B. P. CLAYTON HILL, Cavalry-Reserve,
Commanding

THE active duty training period of the 306th Cavalry began July 1st and will extend through July 27th, the camp training being divided into two periods, July 1st-14th, and July 14th-27th. The Unit Instructor, Major Harry McE. Pendleton, and members of the regiment are now well into the first period.

Equitation classes were discontinued at the end of May, the last class being held on May 26th.

The active duty mission this summer is the training of C.M.T.C. which should afford to the officers detailed an excellent opportunity to gain some first-hand experience with troops.

2d Squadron and Machine-Gun Troop, 306th Cavalry — Washington, D. C.

MAJOR GEARY F. EPPLEY, Cavalry-Reserve,
Commanding

ON May 23d, 1935, a dinner was given by the Squadron at the Army and Navy Country Club in honor of the departing Unit Instructor, Lieutenant Colonel Harley C. Dagley. The organization turned out in force for the occasion.

Major John C. Mullenix, Cavalry, who assumed his duties as Unit Instructor of the Squadron June 27th, is greatly interested in both the active and inactive training of his new unit, and plans during the coming fall, to inaugurate a drive among Cavalry Reservists of Washington and vicinity for increased attendance at instructional conferences and greater activity in the Army Extension Courses. Such a move is considered to be particularly desirable at that time in order to prevent a considerable decrease in the record of activity due to the large percentage of Cavalry Reserve officers away on active duty with the Civilian Conservation Corps.

The quota of thirty-six Reserve officers from the 2nd Squadron, 306th Cavalry will be divided into two groups of eighteen officers each, to receive active duty training at Fort Myer, Virginia, the first group to train July 1st to 14th, and the second group July 14th to 27th. In addition, twenty-one members of the Squadron are on active duty with the C.C.C.

307th Cavalry — Richmond, Va.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL ROBERT B. H. BEGG,
Cavalry-Reserve, *Commanding*

JUNE 20th was the date of our last conference for the "Academic Year." The last eight conferences

were devoted to subjects preparatory to summer training in the unit camp. Thirty-eight applications were made by regimental officers for this summer training. Twenty-one of these officers may expect to be ordered.

3d Squadron Machine-Gun Troop, 307th Cavalry, Norfolk, Virginia

MAJOR JAMES R. MULLEN, Cavalry-Reserve,
Commanding

THE unit was honored on June 18th by a visit from Colonel John D. Long, Chief of Staff, 62d Cavalry Division, who attended the last unit school conference of the current inactive duty period. At this meeting Second Lieutenant E. E. Ebersole, 307th Cavalry, gave an excellent talk on "Oral Combat Orders for Small Units," following which Major James R. Mullen, 307th Cavalry, conducted a series of small problems applicable to this subject. After the conference, Colonel Long spoke to the officers briefly. The following recent graduates of V.M.I. have been assigned to the 62d Cavalry Division, and as they live in this vicinity, will probably become members of our unit: Second Lieutenants Edwin T. Arnold, Cecil C. Frost, Jr., Hayward D. Luckett, Jr., Edward H. Renn, Reuben F. Trant, Jr., and John E. Wales, III. They are now undergoing active duty training at Fort Myer. We bid them a hearty welcome to the Norfolk Cavalry Units.

Of the 14 officers who applied for active duty training this summer at Fort Myer, 7 have been selected to go.

Technical Sergeant John F. Heise, D.E.M.L., as a consequence of his recent well deserved promotion, and after 12 years service as assistant to the Instructor and as chief clerk of the Norfolk Organized Reserves Office, has been relieved and ordered to Pittsburgh to the Headquarters 99th Division. He has been unsparing in his service and advice to us, always working for the good of the unit without regard to hours, and, while we congratulate him on a step up, we deeply regret his departure. He has been our good friend and wise counsellor.

308th Cavalry — Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

COLONEL GEORGE H. CHERRINGTON, Cavalry-Reserve,
Commanding

ON Sunday, June 30th, members of the regiment and their guests gathered at the 308th Cavalry Training Center, Aspinwall, Pa., for the last conference of the 1934-1935 Inactive Training Period. The conference conducted by Colonel Cherrington covered the Combat Principles of the Squadron, Mounted and Dismounted. Following the conference, the regiment put on a show consisting of mounted drill, competitive jumping, competitive pistol firing and ending with a buffet dinner, cards and dancing. Approximately 300 people attended.

The following promotions within the regiment are announced: Lieutenant Colonel George H. Cherrington to

Colonel; First Lieutenants James P. Barr, Jr., Alexander O. Froede, Ellis O. Keller and, Stanley W. Rosenbaum to Captain; and Second Lieutenants Philip R. Gillespie and Samuel K. Humphreys to First Lieutenant.

862d Field Artillery (Horse) — Baltimore, Md.

COLONEL ROGER S. B. HARTZ, Field Artillery, Reserve,
Commanding

ACTIVE duty for the 862d Field Artillery will begin on July 14th and extend through July 27th. A conference held on July 11th was attended by the officers designated to attend camp this summer. The conference was devoted to final instructions and discussions relative to preparation for active duty.

Equitation classes, which had been attended by officers of this regiment, were discontinued on June 1st.

The Unit Instructor, Lieutenant Colonel John M. McDowell, Field Artillery, has been detailed on temporary duty with the Inspector General's Office, Third Corps Area. An officer to replace Colonel McDowell as Unit Instructor is expected to be assigned in sufficient time to attend camp with the officers of the regiment this summer.

65th Cavalry Division

ON June 19th the 65th Cavalry Division Association held a meeting at the Army and Navy Club of Chicago.

The main feature of the evening was a swim held in the tank of the club. Following the swim an enjoyable dinner was held in the club's dining room, followed by a meeting in the club room.

Various suggestions were made for the good of the order and a motion was made to appoint a committee on establishing a policy and program for the organization's meetings.

A roll call was taken on reasons for joining the Officers' Reserve Corps.

On July 10th a special meeting of the Association was held at Link's Bavarian Restaurant in Glen View, Ill., in conjunction with a dinner held by the 317th Cavalry and other officers attending summer camp at Fort Sheridan. There were over 100 officers present with special guests including besides the commanding officer of the regiment, Colonel T. A. Siqueland, General Merrill from Fort Sheridan, and Admiral Downs of the Great Lakes Naval Training Station.

Entertainers a la Bavarian and humorous additions a la Colonel Graham put a keen edge on the refreshments consumed making the evening a howling success.

Just before the dinner held by the 317th Cavalry at Link's Bavarian Restaurant a ceremony was held in the troop street at Fort Sheridan conducted by Colonel T. A. Siqueland. Three officers of the regiment were presented with ten-year gold medals for long and honorable service

in the regiment. Six officers were presented with five-year silver medals for long and honorable service in the regiment. The officers were decorated by Brigadier General Dana T. Merrill, Commanding General of Fort Sheridan. These medals are presented from time to time to officers of the 317th Cavalry who have distinguished themselves by their activities and interest in the regiment and who have been in the regiment five or ten years or more and attended at least two summer camps during each five-year period. This custom was initiated by Colonel Siqueland and does much to give the 317th Cavalry a real *esprit de corps*.

66th Cavalry Division

RESERVE officers of the cavalry section were afforded varied training in this corps area this year.

The general unit camp at Fort Riley was conducted under the command of Lieutenant Colonel Hugh H. Broadhurst, whose able staff, as in 1934, included Majors Harold Thompson, Willard S. Wadleton, and Edward F. Shaifer. The program included elementary drill rehearsals, pistol and rifle marksmanship, care of animals, troop, squadron and regimental drill, terrain and field exercises and study of new automatic weapons, marches and march discipline, a night march, study of motorized units, combat exercises and a night ride. Equitation, jumping, and cross-country rides came in for their share.

The splendid program was arranged by the above-named officers and the tour was greatly appreciated by the trainees, who included Captain John Andie, and Second Lieutenants W. A. Barrett, R. E. Newman, W. W. Woodward, of Kansas City; F. G. Alden, H. J. Biesemeyer, W. M. Clark, W. H. Farrel, J. K. Haddick, and A. L. E. Zachorle, of Des Moines, Iowa; J. R. Bender, M. E. Callaway, B. C. Miller, and R. B. Plume, of St. Joseph, Missouri; E. M. Dennison, of St. Louis; and W. R. Hayward of Wichita, Kansas.

The remaining trainees of this division were on duty with C.M.T.C., Des Moines, Iowa, during June and July, and included were: Captains Val Hakanson and M. B. Leith, of Kansas City; Captains Ed. Brown and G. E. Westman, of Minneapolis; First Lieutenants H. S. Dean, F. C. Lyon, G. W. Kelley, M. F. Sweet, R. T. Boyle, G. Gosch, Jr., and J. K. Little, of Kansas City; L. D. Shaw, of Enderlin, North Dakota; T. L. Long, of Wichita, Kansas; A. E. Farrel, of Davenport, Iowa; Second Lieutenants B. F. Betzer, and A. D. Hull, of Omaha; D. L. Johnson and L. B. Shellcross, of St. Louis; J. D. Clemmons, of Bowling Green; H. E. Drake, of Cape Girardeau; J. W. Farris, C. R. Moatyrd, and F. C. Richards, of St. Louis; K. H. Peters, of Larned, Kansas; S. D. Cain, of Davenport; W. C. Fletcher, Q. Hornaday, F. R. Hubbard, Jr., L. B. Reppert, A. P. Sheridan, H. I. Smith, W. H. Snodgras, W. E. Thiessen, of Des Moines, and S. S. Segard and M. C. Watson, of Minneapolis.

The 866th Field Artillery (horse) trained at Fort Riley, with Colonel J. W. Leedom, Field Artillery-Reserve, and six other officers.

Major Thomas C. Swanson was ordered to ten weeks' duty as sub-district commander in the Missouri District, C.C.C., to terminate September 14th. First Lieutenant W. S. McNamara, of Kansas City, is a C.C.C. company

commander at Indian Trail State Park, near Salem, Missouri, and First Lieutenant F. C. Andres, of Minneapolis, is on duty with a C.C.C. company at Liberty, Missouri.

All cavalry reserve officers appreciate fully the efforts made by Lieutenant Colonel Broadhurst and his staff to make the tours interesting and instructive, and the quartering and messing entirely wholesome.

1 1 1

Horse Show Calendar

International Shows

September 28-October 7—Warsaw Poland.
October 5-12—Pacific International, Portland, Oregon.
November 20-28—Royal Winter Fair, Toronto, Canada.
November 30-December 7—International Livestock Exposition, Chicago, Ill.

Domestic Shows

August 15-17—Cohasset, Mass.
August 15-17—Charlestown, W. Va.
August 16-18—Lake Placid, N. Y.
August 17—Easthampton, L. I., N. Y.
August 17-25—San Joaquin, Cal.
August 20-23—Erie County, Hamburg, N. Y.
August 21-25—North Shore Horse Show, Stony Brook, L.I., N.Y.
August 22-23—Berryville, Va.
August 23-24—Pocono Mountain, Mount Pocono, Pa.
August 23-25—North Shore, L. I., N. Y.
August 25—Lakeville, N. Y.
August 26-30—Empire State Horse Show, Syracuse, N. Y.
August 28-29—Rhinebeck, Dutchess County, N. Y.
August 28-29—Rappahannock, Va.
August 29-30—Flemington, N. J.
August 31—Smithtown, St. James, L. I., N. Y.
August 31-September 1—Danbury, Conn.

August 31-September 1—May-U-Win, Newport, R. I.
September 1—Westchester Embassy Club.
September 2-3—Genesee Valley, N. Y.
September 2-3—Warrenton, Va.
September 6—Chatham, N. Y.
September 6-7—Fairfax, Va.
September 6-7—Middletown, N. Y.
September 7—Dutchess County, Poughkeepsie, N. Y.
September 8—Soldiers and Sailors, East Norwich, L. I.
September 12-14—Wissahickon, Pa.
September 14—Elon, Va.
September 14—Greenwich, Conn.
September 16-21—Springfield, Mass.
September 18-19—Mineola, L. I.
September 20-21—Boulder Brook, Scarsdale, N. Y.
September 25-28—Bryn Mawr, Pa.
September 27-28—Montclair, N. J.
September 28—National Polo Pony, Westbury, L. I., N. Y.
October 2-5—Bartlesville National, Bartlesville, Okla.
October 4-5—Piping Rock, Locust Valley, L. I., N. Y.
October 11-12—Orange, N. J.
October 19-26—American Royal Horse Show, Kansas City, Mo.
October 29-November 2—Boston, Mass.
November 6-12—National, New York.
November 29-30—Peekskill, N. Y.
December 5-8—110th Cavalry, Boston, Mass.
December 6-7—Westchester Indoor, N. Y.

August

Mis-
apolis,
ssouri.
efforts
caff to
quar-

y, Mo